

**Unit-1****The United States of America-Geography, Transportation,  
Culture, Important Tourist Cities, Monuments, Historical  
Attractions, Museums and Art Galleries**

---

**Structure:****1.1 Objectives****1.2 Introduction****1.3 Geography of USA****1.4 Transportation in USA****1.5 Culture of USA****1.6 Tourism in USA****1.7 Important Tourist Cities of USA****1.8 New England Region of USA****1.9 Other Destinations of USA****1.10 Natural Scenery of USA****1.11 Historical Attractions of USA****1.12 Monuments & Architecture****1.13 Museums And Galleries****1.14 Top 10 Attractions in USA****1.15 Let's sum up****1.16 Clues to Answers**

---

**1.1 OBJECTIVES:**

---

This unit aims at explaining USA as a tourist destination and giving students the idea about the different geographical & and cultural aspects of USA and what makes the country amongst the top tourist destinations in terms of tourism receipts & tourist arrivals after going through the Unit 1 on USA you will understand the following.

- To understand the geographical location of the country.
- To understand the different modes of transportation to the country.
- To understand the importance of culture in development of tourism.
- To understand the characteristics of tourism industry in USA.
- To understand the natural attractions in the country.
- To understand the important tourist cities in the country.
- To understand the top tourist attractions in the country.

---

**1.2 INTRODUCTION:**

---

Unit 1 makes an effort to give the students idea about the USA as a tourist destination and help them understand the different dimensions of the tourism attractions in the country, this unit attempts to throw the light on the important cities, geographical aspects, man-made attractions, American art, culture, people, environment, geography, history, economy and government. etc. in the USA, so that student can understand the reasons that what makes USA most preferred destination all over the world.

The **United States of America** (also called the **United States**, the **U.S.**, the **USA**, **America**, and the **States**) is a federal constitutional republic comprising fifty states and a federal district. The country is situated mostly in central North America, where its forty-eight contiguous states and the state of Alaska is in the northwest of the continent, with Canada to the east and Russia to the west, across the Bering Strait. The state of Hawaii is an archipelago in the mid-Pacific. The country also possesses several territories in the Pacific and Caribbean.

At 3.79 million square miles (9.83 million km<sup>2</sup>) and with over 312 million people, the **United States is the third or fourth largest country by total area, and the third largest by both land area and population.** It is one of the world's most ethnically diverse and multicultural nations, the product of large-scale immigration from many countries. The U.S. economy is the world's largest national economy

## FAST FACTS

<b>Capital:</b> Washington D.C.
<b>Size:</b> 9,826,675 square kilometers (3,794,083 square miles)
<b>Population:</b> 308,745,538 (U.S. Census 2010)
<b>Motto:</b> <i>In God we trust</i>
<b>Date of Independence:</b> July 4, 1776
<b>Largest State:</b> Alaska
<b>Smallest State:</b> Rhode Island
<b>Highest Point:</b> Mount McKinley, Alaska (20,320 feet above sea level)
<b>Border Countries:</b> Mexico, Canada
<b>Time Zones:</b> Eastern, Central, Mountain, Pacific, Alaska, Hawaii-Aleutian
<b>Anthem:</b> The Star-Spangled Banner Lyrics/Music by: Francis Scott Key/John Stafford Smith
<b>March:</b> Stars and Stripes Forever John Philip Sousa
<b>Bird:</b> Bald Eagle
<b>Flower:</b> Rose
<b>Tree:</b> Oak
<b>Lowest Point:</b> Death Valley, California (282 feet below sea level)

The national **flag of the United States of America** (or the **American flag**) consists of thirteen equal horizontal stripes of red (top and bottom) alternating with white, with a blue rectangle in the canton (referred to specifically as the "union") bearing fifty small, white, five-pointed stars arranged in nine offset horizontal rows of six stars (top and bottom) alternating with rows of five stars. The 50 stars on the flag represent the 50 states and the 13 stripes represent the thirteen British colonies that rebelled against the British monarchy and became the first states in the Union. Nicknames for the flag include the

"Stars and Stripes", "Old Glory", and "The Star-Spangled Banner" (also the name of the national anthem).

---

**1.3 GEOGRAPHY OF USA:**

---

The land area of the contiguous United States is approximately 1,900 million acres (7,700,000 km<sup>2</sup>). Alaska, separated from the contiguous United States by Canada, is the largest state at 365 million acres (1,480,000 km<sup>2</sup>). Hawaii, occupying an archipelago in the central Pacific, southwest of North America, has just over 4 million acres (16,000 km<sup>2</sup>). The United States is the world's third or fourth largest nation by total area (land and water), ranking behind Russia and Canada.

The Appalachian Mountains divide the eastern seaboard from the Great Lakes and the grasslands of the Midwest. The Mississippi–Missouri River, the world's fourth longest river system, runs mainly north–south through the heart of the country. The United States is a federal union of fifty states. The original thirteen states were the successors of the thirteen colonies that rebelled against British rule. Early in the country's history, three new states were organized on territory separated from the claims of the existing states: Kentucky from Virginia; Tennessee from North Carolina; and Maine from Massachusetts. Most of the other states have been carved from territories obtained through war or purchase by the U.S. government.

---

**1.4 TRANSPORTATION IN USA:**

---

- **By Air: Most** visitors from outside Canada and Mexico arrive in the United States by plane. While many medium sized inland cities have an international airport, there are limited flights to most of these and most travelers find themselves entering the U.S. at one of the major entry points along the coasts:

**From the east** New York City, Chicago, Philadelphia, Atlanta, Charlotte, Boston, Washington, D.C., Orlando, and Miami are the primary entry points from Europe and other transatlantic points of departure. All the major east coast airports have service from a few key European cities.

**From the west** Los Angeles, San Francisco, and Honolulu are the primary points of entry from Asia and other transpacific points of departure. Seattle and Portland (Oregon) have a few international flight options. Of course, if you arrive in Honolulu, you must take another flight to get to the mainland. Foreign airlines are *not* allowed to transport passengers to/from Hawaii or Alaska and the other 48 states (except for refueling and in-transit). If you are flying into the west coast to transit to another destination, San Francisco airport has a free frequent skytrain linking terminals and short security queues, compared to Los Angeles which will see you exposed to the elements catching a shuttle bus or walking between terminals. Chicago, while not on the west coast, is still a major point of entry from Asia, offering non-stop flights from

Tokyo, Hong Kong, Shanghai, Beijing, and Seoul, with direct service from Bangkok and Singapore.

**From the south** Miami and Houston are the primary entry points from Latin America, primarily South America. Also, Dallas, Atlanta, and Charlotte are major international waypoints. From Mexico, most major U.S. airports have non-stop service.

**From the other side of the world** New Delhi, India has non-stop service to Chicago, Newark (New Jersey), and New York. Mumbai has non-stop flights to Newark (New Jersey) and New York. From Pakistan, Saudi Arabia, Uzbekistan and United Arab Emirates you can also fly to New York (JFK). Qatar, and Saudi Arabian fly to Washington, DC, and South African Airways goes to New York (JFK) and Washington, DC (Dulles). Los Angeles and Houston both offer non-stop service to Qatar and United Arab Emirates.

- **By car:** The U.S.-Canada & U.S.-Mexico borders are two of the most frequently crossed borders with millions of crossings daily. As of June 1, 2009, ALL persons wishing to enter the United States by land must possess a valid passport; NEXUS, FAST, or passport card; Laser Visa; or an "enhanced driver's license" (issued by certain U.S. states & Canadian provinces) Traffic travels on the right hand side (as it does in Canada and Mexico).
- **By bus:** Greyhound offers substantial inexpensive cross-border service from both Canada and Mexico throughout their network. Some routes, such as Toronto to Buffalo have hourly service.
- **By boat:** Entering the U.S. by sea, other than on a registered cruise ship, may be difficult. The most common entry points for private boats are Los Angeles and the surrounding area, Florida, and the Eastern coastal states. Some passenger ferries exist between Canada and the U.S., notably from the Atlantic Provinces to New England, and from Victoria, British Columbia to Seattle.
- **By train:** Amtrak offers international service from the Canadian cities of Vancouver (Amtrak Cascades 2 trips per day to Seattle, WA), Toronto (Maple Leaf - daily trip to New York City), and Montreal (Adirondack- daily trip to New York City) into the U.S. Cross-border rail service is more expensive and slower than buses - which are more frequent and serve a larger range of US destinations from both Canada and Mexico.

---

### **1.5 CULTURE OF USA:**

---

The United States is a multicultural nation, home to a wide variety of ethnic groups, traditions, and values. Aside from the now small Native American and Native Hawaiian populations, nearly all Americans or their ancestors immigrated within the past five centuries. Mainstream American culture is a Western culture largely derived from the

traditions of European immigrants with influences from many other sources, such as traditions brought by slaves from Africa. More recent immigration from Asia and especially Latin America has added to a cultural mix that has been described as both a homogenizing melting pot, and a heterogeneous salad bowl in which immigrants and their descendants retain distinctive cultural characteristics. American culture is considered the most individualistic in the world. Though the American Dream, or the perception that Americans enjoy high social mobility, plays a key role in attracting immigrants, other developed nations offer greater social mobility. While the mainstream culture holds that the United States is a classless society, scholars identify significant differences between the country's social classes, affecting socialization, language, and values. The American middle and professional class has initiated many contemporary social trends such as modern feminism, environmentalism, and multiculturalism. Americans' self-images, social viewpoints, and cultural expectations are associated with their occupations to an unusually close degree. While Americans tend greatly to value socioeconomic achievement, being ordinary or average is generally seen as a positive attribute.

---

**1.6 TOURISM IN USA:**

---

Tourism in the United States is a large industry that serves millions of international and domestic tourists yearly. Tourists visit the US to see natural wonders, cities, historic landmarks and entertainment venues. Americans seek similar attractions, as well as recreation and vacation areas. In 2010, there were 940 million international tourist arrivals all over the world, with a growth of 6.6% as compared to 2009. Where USA was at 2<sup>nd</sup> place after France. France was at first place with 76.8 million tourist arrivals & United States (North America) at second place with 59.7 million tourist arrivals.

In terms of Tourism receipt, International tourism receipts grew to US\$919 billion (€693 billion) in 2010, corresponding to an increase in real terms of 4.7% from 2009. Where in United States (North America) recorded the highest tourism receipt of \$103.5 billion, followed by Spain (Europe) with \$52.5 billion & France (Europe) \$46.3 billion.

Tourism in the United States grew rapidly in the form of urban tourism during the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries. By the 1850s, tourism in the United States was well established both as a cultural activity and as an industry. New York, Chicago, Washington, D.C. and San Francisco, all major US cities, attracted a large number of tourists by the 1890s.

By 1915, city touring had marked significant shifts in the way Americans perceived, organized and moved around in urban environments. Democratization of travel occurred during the early twentieth century when the automobile revolutionized travel. Similarly, air travel revolutionized travel during 1945–1969, contributing greatly to tourism in the United States. By 2007 the number of international tourists had climbed to over 56 million people who spent \$122.7 billion dollars, setting an all time record.

The travel and tourism industry in the United States was among the first commercial casualties of the September 11, 2001 attacks, a series of terrorist attacks on the US. Terrorists used four commercial airliners as weapons of destruction, all of which were destroyed in the attacks with 3,000 casualties.

In the US, tourism is either the first, second or third largest employer in 29 states, employing 7.3 million in 2004, to take care of 1.19 billion trips tourists took in the US in 2005. As of 2007, there are 2,462 registered National Historic Landmarks (NHL) recognized by the United States government. As of 2008, the most visited tourist attraction in the US is Times Square in Manhattan, New York City which attracts approximately 35 million visitors yearly.

---

**1.7 IMPORTANT TOURIST CITIES OF USA:**

---

The United States has over 10,000 cities, towns, and villages. The following is a list of *nine* of the most notable. Other cities can be found in their corresponding regions.

- **Washington, D.C.** – the national capital, filled with major museums and monuments, along with multi-cultural communities. There is so much to see and do in Washington, DC that you can't see it all in just one visit. A well-rounded trip should include exploring the National Mall and some other activities too.
- **Boston** – best known for its colonial history, its passion for sports, and its university students.
- **Chicago** – heart of the Midwest and transportation hub of the nation, with massive skyscrapers and other architectural gems.
- **Los Angeles** – home of the film industry, musical artists, and surfers, with beautiful mild weather, great natural beauty from mountains to beaches, and endless stretches of freeways and smog.
- **Miami** – attracts sun-seeking northerners and home to a rich Caribbean culture.
- **New Orleans** – the "Big Easy" and the birthplace of jazz music, known for its quaint French Quarter and annual Mardi Gras celebration.
- **New York City** – the country's largest city, home of the financial services and media industries, with world-class cuisine, arts, architecture, and shopping.
- **San Francisco** – the City by the Bay, featuring the Golden Gate Bridge, vibrant urban neighborhoods, and dramatic fog.
- **Seattle** – rich museums, monuments, and recreational opportunities, and five distinct climates within 200 miles.

---

**1.8 NEW ENGLAND REGION OF USA:**

---

**New England** is a six-state region in the northeast corner of the United States of America. Although it is one of the oldest settled parts of the US, most of the area (except the coastal areas of eastern Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and southwestern Connecticut) retains a rural charm and low population. Most of the area *is* well-travelled and has a thriving tourist industry. Although some of the popular attractions may seem corny to some people, there are many hidden gems to be found in New England.

- **Connecticut:** Home to Hartford and the Knowledge Corridor, Mystic Seaport, the restaurant and nightlife scene in downtown New Haven, the Maritime Aquarium, and two major Native American casinos.
- **Maine:** Known for its seacoast fishing villages, wooded and remote interior, and stunning vistas such as that found in Acadia National Park
- **Massachusetts:** The birthplace of America's revolution, home to the Pioneer Valley, the vacation hotspot of Cape Cod, and the always-interesting city of Boston.
- **New Hampshire:** A fiercely independent state that offers the rugged White Mountains, idyllic lakes, and a handful of ocean resorts
- **Rhode Island:** The smallest state in the United States, but has many miles of coastline and islands and is home to Providence and Newport.
- **Vermont:** The fall foliage in Vermont is not to be missed, while the rest of the year offers a rural charm unique in America.

---

**1.9 OTHER DESTINATIONS OF USA:**

---

The Grand Canyon, Arizona. These are some of the largest and most famous destinations outside of major cities.

- **Denali National Park** – a remote national park featuring North America's highest peak
- **Grand Canyon** – the world's longest and most visited canyon
- **Mesa Verde National Park** – well-preserved Ancestral Puebloan cliff dwellings
- **Mount Rushmore** – the iconic memorial of 4 former presidents carved into a cliff face
- **Niagara Falls** – the massive waterfalls straddling the border with Canada

- **Great Smoky Mountains National Park** – national park in the southern Appalachians
- **Walt Disney World** – the most popular vacation resort destination in the world
- **Yellowstone National Park** – the first national park in the US, and home of the Old Faithful geyser
- **Yosemite National Park** – home of El Capitan and the famous Giant Sequoia trees

---

**1.10 NATURAL SCENERY OF USA:**

---

From the spectacular glaciers of Alaska to the wooded, weathered peaks of Appalachian; from the otherworldly desertscapes of the Southwest to the vast waters of the Great Lakes, few other countries have as wide a variety of natural scenery as the United States does.

America's **National Parks** are a great place to start. Yellowstone National Park was the first true National Park in the world, and it remains one of the most famous, but there are 57 others. The Grand Canyon is possibly the world's most spectacular gorge; Sequoia National Park and Yosemite National Park are both home to the world's tallest living organisms; Glacier National Park is a great place to see huge sheets of ice; Canyonlands National Park could easily be mistaken for Mars; and the Great Smoky Mountains National Park features abundant wildlife among beautifully forested mountains. And the national parks aren't just for sightseeing; each has plenty of outdoor activities as well.

Still, the National Parks are just the beginning. The National Park Service also operates National Monuments, National Memorials, National Historic Sites, National Seashores, National Heritage Areas. And each state has its own **state parks** that can be just as good as the federal versions. Most all of these destinations, federal or state, have an admission fee, but it all goes toward the maintenance and operations of the parks, and the rewards are well worth it.

The world-famous Niagara Falls straddle the border between Canada and the United States; the American side allows you to get right up next to the onrush and feel the power that has shaped the Niagara Gorge. The "purple majesty" of the Rocky Mountains can be seen for hundreds of miles in any direction, while the placid coastal areas of the Midwest and the Mid-Atlantic have relaxed Americans for generations. And, although they are very different from each other, Hawaii and Alaska are perhaps the two most scenic states; they don't just *have* attractions – they *are* attractions.

---

**1.11 HISTORICAL ATTRACTIONS OF USA:**

---

Americans often have a misconception of their country as having little history. The U.S. does indeed have a tremendous wealth of historical attractions – more than enough to fill months of history-centric touring. The **prehistory** of the continent can indeed be a little hard to uncover, as most of the Native American tribes did not build permanent settlements. But particularly in the West, you will find magnificent cliff dwellings at sites such as Mesa Verde, as well as near-ubiquitous rock paintings. The Museum of the American Indian in Washington, D.C. is another great place to start learning about America's culture before the arrival of European colonists.

As the first part of the country to be colonized by Europeans, the eastern states of New England, the Mid-Atlantic, and the South have more than their fair share of sites from **early American history**. The first successful British colony on the continent was at Jamestown, Virginia, although the settlement at Plymouth, Massachusetts, may loom larger in the nation's mind.

In the eighteenth century, major centers of commerce developed in Philadelphia and Boston, and as the colonies grew in size, wealth, and self-confidence, relations with Great Britain became strained, culminating in the Boston Tea Party and the ensuing **Revolutionary War**.

---

**1.12 MONUMENTS AND ARCHITECTURE:**

---

Americans have never shied away from heroic feats of engineering, and many of them are among the country's biggest tourist attractions. **Washington, D.C.**, as the nation's capital, has more monuments and statuary than you could see in a day, but do be sure to visit the Washington Monument (the world's tallest obelisk), the stately Lincoln Memorial, and the incredibly moving Vietnam Veterans Memorial. The city's architecture is also an attraction – the Capitol Building and the White House are two of the most iconic buildings in the country and often serve to represent the whole nation to the world. Actually, a number of American cities have world-renowned skylines, perhaps none more than the concrete canyons of **Manhattan**, part of New York City. The site of the destroyed World Trade Center towers remains a gaping wound in Manhattan's vista, but the Empire State Building and the Chrysler Building still stand tall, as they have for almost a century. **Chicago**.

Some human constructions transcend skyline, though, and become iconic symbols in their own right. **The Gateway Arch in St. Louis, the Statue of Liberty in Manhattan, the Hollywood Sign in Los Angeles**, and even the fountains of the **Bellagio casino in Las Vegas** all draw visitors to their respective cities. Even the incredible Mount Rushmore, located far from any major city, still attracts two million visitors each year.

The Gateway Arch in St. Louis, Missouri. It is the tallest man-made monument in the United States i.e, 630 feet (192 m).

The Statue of Liberty stands on a small island in the middle of the New York City harbor. Designed by Sculptor Frederick Auguste Bartholdi, it was a gift of international friendship from the people of France in commemoration of the United States' centennial anniversary in 1876. The 151-foot (46-meters) tall monument stands atop a granite pedestal above the walls of a star shaped abutment. It was not completed and dedicated until October 28 1886. It was designated a National Monument on October 15, 1924. The Statue of Liberty has become one of the most universal symbols of Freedom and Democracy.

**Bellagio casino in Las Vegas** ( Bellagio is a hotel and casino located on the Las Vegas Strip in the Paradise area of unincorporated Clark County, Nevada, USA and a member of The Leading Hotels of the World. It is owned by MGM Resorts International and was built on the site of the demolished Dunes hotel and casino. Inspired by the Lake Como resort of Bellagio in Italy, Bellagio is famed for its elegance. One of its most notable features is an 8-acre (3.2 ha) lake between the building and the Strip, which houses the Fountains of Bellagio, a large dancing water fountain synchronized to music)

---

### **1.13 MUSEUMS AND GALLERIES:**

---

In the United States, there is a museum for *practically everything*. From toys to priceless artifacts, from entertainment legends to dinosaur bones –nearly every city in the country has a museum worth visiting.

The highest concentrations of these museums are found in the largest cities, of course, but none compare to Washington, D.C., home to the **Smithsonian Institution**. With almost twenty independent museums, most of them located on the **National Mall**, the Smithsonian is the foremost curator of American history and achievement.

The most popular of the Smithsonian museums are the **National Air and Space Museum**, the **National Museum of American History**, and the **National Museum of Natural History**. New York City also boasts an impressive array of world-class museums, including the Guggenheim Museum, the American Museum of Natural History, the Museum of Modern Art (MoMA), the Metropolitan Museum of Art, the Intrepid Sea, Air, and **Space Museum**, and the **Ellis Island Immigration Museum**.

You could spend weeks exploring the cultural institutions just in D.C. and the Big Apple, but here is a small fraction of the other great museums you would be missing:

- Carnegie Museums of Pittsburgh – Pittsburgh
- Children's Museum of Indianapolis – Indianapolis, Indiana
- Exploratorium – San Francisco
- Hollywood Walk of Fame – Los Angeles

- Monterey Bay Aquarium – Monterey, California
- Museum of Science & Industry – Chicago
- Naismith Memorial Basketball Hall of Fame – Springfield, Massachusetts
- National Aquarium in Baltimore – Baltimore, Maryland
- National Baseball Hall of Fame and Museum – Cooperstown, New York
- Pro Football Hall of Fame – Canton, Ohio
- Rock and Roll Hall of Fame and Museum – Cleveland, Ohio
- San Diego Zoo – San Diego, California
- Strong National Museum of Play – Rochester, New York

---

**1.14 TOP 10 ATTRACTIONS IN USA:**

---

As one of the largest and most diverse countries in the world, The United States boast an amazing amount of tourist destinations ranging from the skyscrapers of New York and Chicago, the natural wonders of Yellowstone and Alaska to the sunny beaches of California, Florida and Hawaii. With so many tourist attractions it's tempting to list entire cities or even states, but in this top 10, touropia.com has tried to focus on specific attractions.

**1) Grand Canyon:** The Grand Canyon is located in northern Arizona and is one of the great tourist attractions in the United States. Carved over several million years by the Colorado River, the canyon attains a depth of over 1.6 km (1 mile) and 446 km (277 miles) long. The Grand Canyon is not the deepest or the longest canyon in the world but the overwhelming size and its intricate and colorful landscape offers visitor spectacular vistas that are unmatched throughout the world.

**2) Manhattan:** Manhattan is one of New York's five boroughs and is what people most often think of when they picture New York. It's familiar skyline and sights have been featured a thousand times on screen. Walk in the shadow of the skyscrapers, picture the Statue of Liberty, see a Broadway show, climb the Empire State building, stroll Central Park, window shop on 5th Avenue or stagger around a museum.

**3) Yellowstone:** Yellowstone National Park was the world's first national park, set aside in 1872 to preserve the vast number of geysers, hot springs, and other thermal areas, as well as to protect the incredible wildlife and rugged beauty of the area. Yellowstone lies on top of a gigantic hotspot where light, hot, molten mantle rock rises towards the surface. Subsequently, the park contains half of all the world's known geothermal features, with more than 10,000 examples of geysers and hot springs. In addition, black bears, grizzly bears, deer, elk, bison and wolves can all be found within the park borders.

**4) Golden Gate Bridge:** The Golden Gate Bridge is a suspension bridge spanning the Golden Gate, the strait between **San Francisco and Marin County** to the north. The Golden Gate Bridge was the longest suspension bridge span in the world when it was completed in 1937, and has become an internationally recognized symbol of San Francisco and California. The famous red-orange color of the bridge was specifically

chosen to make the bridge more easily visible through the thick fog that frequently shrouds the bridge.

**5) Niagara Falls:** Situated between the state of New York and the province of Ontario, Niagara Falls is one of the most spectacular natural wonders on the North American continent. Niagara Falls is actually three different falls, **the American Falls, Bridal Veil Falls** and **Horseshoe Falls**. Horseshoe Falls is located on the Canadian side while the other are located in New York. With more than 14 million visitors each year it is one of the most visited tourist attraction in the world.

**6) Kilauea:** Kilauea is the most recent of a series of volcanoes that have created the Hawaiian Archipelago. It is a very low, flat shield volcano, vastly different in profile from the high, sharply sloping peaks of stratovolcanoes. Kilauea is one of the most active volcano on the Earth, an invaluable resource for volcanologists. Thirty-three eruptions have taken place since 1952, not including the current eruption which started on January 3, 1983 and is still ongoing.

**7) Florida Keys:** The Florida Keys are a 120 mile long chain of tropical islands curving around the base of the Florida peninsula, connected to the mainland by a series of bridges. The most spectacular bridge, the Seven Mile Bridge in the Lower Keys, has been frequently used as a location for films including True Lies and Fast 2 Furious. US Highway 1, the "Overseas Highway" runs from Key Largo, Islamadora, Marathon, Lower Keys and finally to Key West, the most distant and most famous island.

**8) Las Vegas Strip:** The gambling mecca of the world, Las Vegas is situated in the midst of the southern Nevada desert landscape. Casinos can be found throughout Las Vegas, but the strip, a stretch of Las Vegas Boulevard South, contains the most of them. It features giant mega-casino hotels, decorated with lavish care and attention to detail to create a fantasy-like atmosphere. The casinos often have names and themes that evoke romance, mystery, and far-away destination.

**9) Denali National Park:** The Denali National Park and Preserve is located in Interior Alaska and contains Mount McKinley, the highest mountain in North America. The word "Denali" means "the high one" in the native Athabaskan language and refers to Mount McKinley. In addition, the park protects an incredible wilderness area that contains grizzly bears, caribou, moose, wolves, and numerous other creatures.

**10) White House:** The White House is the official residence and office of the President of the United States. It was built between 1792 and 1800 and first used by President John Adams. After the 9/11 attacks it has become more difficult to visit the White House and today tours are available only for groups of 10 or more and must be requested up to six months in advance through your member of Congress or your country's US Ambassador.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS:**

---

1) What do you understand by New England Region?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

2) What do the stars and the strips represent in the flag of the USA?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

3) What is Florida Keys?

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

4) Discuss in detail the natural and historical tourist attractions in the USA.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

---

**1.15 LETS US SUM UP:**

---

After completing this unit, we now understand the important cities, geographical aspects, man-made attractions, American art, culture, people, environment, geography, history, economy, and government, among others. We have come to understand the USA as a tourist destination and the various dimensions of the tourism attractions within the country. After completing this unit, we have gained a deeper understanding of the reasons that make the USA the most preferred destination worldwide.

In the following units, we will explore other important destinations, including Mexico and Spain.

---

**1.16 CLUES TO ANSWERS:**

---

---

**Check Your Progress:**

---

- 1) Refer Sec. 1.8.
- 2) Refer Sec. 1.2.
- 3) Refer Sec. 1.14.
- 4) Refer Sec. 1.10 & 1.11.

---

**REFERENCE:**

---

- Cerwinske, Laura; Kaminsky, David (1981), *Tropical Deco: The Architecture and Design of Old Miami Beach*, Rizzoli, ISBN 0847803457
- Cocks, Catherine (2001), *Doing the Town: The Rise of Urban Tourism in the United States, 1850-1915*, University of California Press, pp. 6-7, ISBN 0520227468
- Grant, Kim; Penland, Paige R. (January 2003), *Florida* (3rd ed.), Lonely Planet Publications, p. 27, ISBN 1740591364
- [http://www.mapsofworld.com/usa/usa-maps/maps\\_of\\_world\\_usa\\_states\\_city.jpg](http://www.mapsofworld.com/usa/usa-maps/maps_of_world_usa_states_city.jpg)
- <http://www.touropia.com/tourist-attractions-in-the-usa/>
- Mak, James (2003), *Tourism and the Economy: understanding the economics of tourism*, University of Hawaii Press, p. 193, ISBN 0824827899
- Parks, Janet B.; Jerome, Quaterman; Lucie, Thibault (2007), *Contemporary sport management*, Human Kinetics, p. 142, ISBN 073606365X
- Ryan, Chris (2003), *Recreational tourism: Demand and Impacts*, Channel View Publications, p. 18, ISBN 1873150563
- Sears, John F. (1998), *Sacred Places: American Tourist Attractions in the Nineteenth Century*, University of Massachusetts Press, p. 123, ISBN 1558491627
- Standeven, Joy; de Knop, Paul (1999), *Sport Tourism*, Human Kinetics, p. 20, ISBN 0873228537
- Yenne, Bill (2005), *Classic American Airliners*, Zenith Imprint, p. 8, ISBN 0760319316

- *2007 Sets All Time International Tourism Record for U.S.*, March 10, 2008
- [http://www.commerce.gov/NewsRoom/PressReleases\\_FactSheets/PROD01\\_005355](http://www.commerce.gov/NewsRoom/PressReleases_FactSheets/PROD01_005355), retrieved 2008-06-28

**Unit-2**  
**Canada- History, Important Tourist Destinations, Festivals and Events**

---

**Structure:**

**2.1 Objectives**

**2.2 Introduction**

**2.3 History of Canada**

**2.4 Variety of Tourism Products in Canada**

**2.5 Canada's Ten Biggest Cities**

**2.6 Tourism Resources in Canada**

**2.7 Top Ten Places in Canada**

**2.8 Lets up Sum Up**

**2.9 Clues to Answers**

---

**2.1 OBJECTIVES:**

---

The aims of this unit is to provide information of Canada, Tourism point of view. This unit will guide the student about the Geographical location and all Tourism aspects of Canada, which attract not only domestic tourists but also foreign tourists in terms of tourism receipts and tourist arrivals. After going through Unit 2 on Canada, You will understand the following:

- Geographical location of the country
- Historical richness of the Country
- Importance of Culture in the development of Tourism
- Characteristics of the Tourism Industry in Canada
- Natural Attractions in the Country
- Important tourist cities in the Country
- Top tourist attractions of the Country

---

**2.2 INTRODUCTION:**

---

Unit 2 makes an effort to give students an idea of Canada as a tourist destination and helps them understand the various dimensions of the country's tourist attractions. This unit attempts to shed light on the important cities, Geographical aspects, Attractions (Natural and Man-made), culture, and its various aspects, environment, history, economy, and government in Canada. Some interesting facts about Canada:

- **Name:** Canada
- **Population:** 33,476,688 (2011 census)
- **Capital:** Ottawa
- **Language:** The official languages are English and French
- **Religion:** Mostly Christians with 45% of the population Roman Catholic while 36% are either Anglican or of the United Church
- **Government:** Federal parliamentary democracy under constitutional monarchy
- **Currency:** The official currency is the Canadian dollar (\$) (CAD)

---

**2.3 HISTORY OF CANADA:**

---

Around 16,000 years ago, the glaciers began melting, allowing people to move south and east into Canada. The exact dates and routes of the peopling of the Americas are the subject of an ongoing debate. The Queen Charlotte Islands, Old Crow Flats, and Bluefish Caves are some of the earliest archaeological sites of Paleo-Indians in Canada.

Canada is located on the North American Continent and occupies nearly all of it north of the United States except for Alaska to the west and a few small French islands.

Topographically, Canada is divided into five regions. (1.) The Atlantic Provinces which consist of rounded hills and rolling plains as well as rugged coasts. (2.) The Great Lakes-St. Lawrence lowlands which consist of fertile low lying plains and constitute the heartland of the population. (3.) The Canadian Shield, an area of Precambrian rock characterised by moss-covered, frozen subsoil and treeless plains in the north, as well as thick forests to the south. The Canadian Shield extends beyond the US border in two areas: the head of Lake Superior and the Adirondack Mountains. As a whole, it accounts for almost 50% of the land area. The shield is often described as a huge saucer centered on the Hudson and James Bays while it has an average elevation of less than 610 metres (2,000 feet). (4.) The interior plains which are unforested in the south and forested in the north with large deposits of oil and potash. (5.) The Cordillera region which is the western strip of folded and faulted mountains and plateau.

The country's highest point is Mount Logan, at 5,951 metres (19,550 feet), which is located in the Yukon Territory. The average elevation for the Western Cordillera region is over 4,500 metres (14,765 feet).

The Arctic Archipelago is located on a submerged plateau while a deeply submerged continental shelf runs along the entire west coast of the Arctic Archipelago from Banks Island to Greenland. The largest islands are those in the Arctic Archipelago, extending from St. Lawrence Bay to Ellesmere. On the western coast, they include the Vancouver and Queen Charlotte Islands, as well as Newfoundland, Prince Edward Island, Cape Breton, the Grand Manan and Campobello Islands, and Anticosti Island on the eastern coast.

The country's chief rivers include the Yukon and Mackenzie in the west, the North Saskatchewan, South Saskatchewan, Saskatchewan and the Athabasca Rivers in central Canada as well as the Ottawa and St. Lawrence Rivers in the east.

Canada has a continental climate, which is arctic in the north and maritime near the west coast. A narrow strip near the US border has a temperate climate with cold winters. The north Canadian coast is permanently icebound except for Hudson Bay which is only frozen for 9 months of the year. The west coast and some inland valleys have mild winters and mild summers with rainfall occurring throughout the year. On the Atlantic coast the winter temperatures are warmer than those of the interior, but summer temperatures are lower. Much of the southern interior of Canada has high summer temperatures and long cold winters. Average temperature ranges in Ottawa are from -15 to -6 degrees Celsius (5 to 21 degrees Fahrenheit) in January to 15 to 26 degrees Celsius (59 to 79 degrees Fahrenheit) in July.

The population consists of either Anglo-Canadian or French-Canadian descendants with 34% of the population of British origin, 26% of French origin and 26% of other European origin. The indigenous Amerindian and Inuit groups represent only 1.5% of the

population. The Canadian Amerindians are distinguished into 7 cultural groups which are the Algonkin tribes, the Agricultural tribes of the eastern woodlands, the Plains tribes, the Pacific Coast tribes, the Western Cordillera tribes, the Basin tribes of the Yukon and Mackenzie Rivers, and the Eskimo tribes.

---

**2.4 VARIETY OF TOURISM PRODUCTS:**

---

The dominant types of tourism are nature-based tourism including ecotourism and also nature tourism; cultural tourism, including museum, historical, aboriginal, and ethnically diverse communities; as well as conventional tourism.

There are many forms of urban tourism in Canada's cities, which features considerable cultural diversity, Conventions, Shopping and so on, and Canada attracts nearly 1/3 of the US Corporate meetings held outside the US and more than 1/3 of association meeting outside the US. In addition, such site-specific form of tourism as golf and skiing are very well established in Canada.

The main types of tourism could also be broken up by season. Summer is the main season. Seasonality is the main challenge for the Canadian tourism industry, according to the CTC. Almost half 44% of Canada's visitors arrive during summer, when major cities, resort areas and transportation carriers are often fully booked and must turn away business.

The mix of tourism opportunities is fairly broad, however Canada through the CTC, has positioned itself to focus on nature and cultural experiences.

- **Adventure and Sports Tourism-** Heli-ski in the Rockies, climb the Athabasca Sand Dunes and cycle the Route Verte.
- **Golf Tourism-** Play golf under the Midnight Sun or run along the bottom of the ocean.
- **Cultural Tourism-** Walk the ramparts of Québec City, or cycle Vancouver's seawall. Put on your hat for the Calgary Stampede and your sunscreen for the Dawson City Music Festival. In every Canadian city you're only steps from good food, great views, and a breath of nature's fresh air. Discover Acadian culture at a summer kitchen party, share stories with a local at the Festival du voyageur, and visit the Virtual Museum of Canada. Learn to raise a tipi, walk through the crystal ROM and hear hello in too many languages to count.
- **Food and Wine Tourism (testing)-** It's the best-kept secret, but they will share: eat local in Canada. Fusion, farm and five-star, we love our food. Discover Ontario's ice wines or visit a microbrewery in Saskatchewan. Find out how Québec cheeses are made or learn to shuck oysters in Prince Edward Island.
- **Explore Tourism-** You know a journey is more than getting from one place to the next, it's about exploring, and discoveries made along the way. Cross the country by rail. Take a floatplane to a remote fishing lodge. Sail along the world's longest coastline. It's time for a road trip Canadian-style.

- **Nature and Outdoors Tourism-**Follow the Canada Geese over Wascana Lake and the caribou migration through Nunavut. Learn to speak moose in Québec and smell the flowers in Butchart Gardens. Get soaked by Niagara Falls. Everywhere you turn, there's nature.
- **Spa and Wellness Tourism-** Breathe in, and exhale. Treat yourself to a sunset massage overlooking the Pacific, soak your muscles in a hot tub as you gaze up at the Northern Lights and salute the sun as you flow into your next yoga move over the Rockies. Slip into bliss and let Canada treat you well.

---

**2.5 CANADA'S TEN BIGGEST CITIES:**

---

1. **Vancouver:** Vancouver is a coastal seaport city on the mainland of British Columbia, Canada. Vancouver is one of the most ethnically and linguistically diverse cities in Canada; 52% of its residents do not speak English as their first language.

Vancouver is well known as an urban centre surrounded by nature, making tourism its second-largest industry. Major film production studios in Vancouver and Burnaby have turned Metro Vancouver into one of the largest film production centres in North America, earning it the film industry nickname, Hollywood North.

For more than a decade, business magazine assessments have ranked Vancouver as one of the most "livable cities" worldwide, and the Economist Intelligence Unit acknowledged it as the first city to rank among the top-ten of the world's most livable cities for five consecutive years.

2. **Montreal:** Montreal is a city in the Canadian province of Quebec. It is the largest city in the province, the second -largest in the country after Toronto and the fifteenth -largest in North America called Ville-Marie or "City of Mary", named after Mount Royal, the triple-peaked hill located in the heart of the city, or *Mont Real* as it was spelled in Middle French (*Mont Royal* in modern French).

In 2009, Montreal was named North America's number one host city for international association events, according to the 2009 preliminary rankings of the International Congress and Convention Association (ICCA). In 2012, QS World University Rankings ranked Montreal the 10th-best place in world to be a university student. Montreal is located in the southwest of the province of Quebec .The city proper covers most of the Island of Montreal at the confluence of the Saint Lawrence and Ottawa Rivers. The port of Montreal lies at one end of the Saint Lawrence Seaway, which is the river gateway that stretches from the Great Lakes into the Atlantic Ocean.

3. **Toronto:** Toronto is the largest city in Canada and the Provincial capital of Ontario It is located in Southern Ontario on the northwestern shore of Lake Ontario. Toronto is a relatively modern city. Its history begins in the late 18th century, when the British Crown

purchased its land from the Mississaugas of the New Credit. The British established a settlement there, called the Town of York, which its lieutenant governor, John Graves Simcoe, designated as the capital of Upper Canada.

Toronto is at the heart of the Greater Toronto Area, and of the densely populated region in South Ontario known as the Golden Horseshoe. Its cosmopolitan and international population reflects its role as an important destination for immigrants to Canada.

4. **Quebec City:** Québec City is the capital of the Canadian province of Quebec. Quebec City is one of the oldest European settlements in North America. Quebec City is located in the Saint Lawrence River valley, on the north bank of the Saint Lawrence River near its meeting with the St. Charles River. The region is low-lying and flat. The river valley has rich, arable soil, which makes this region the most fertile in the province. The Laurentian Mountains lie to the north of the city.

Upper Town lies on the top of Cap - Diamant (Cape Diamond) promontory. A high stone wall surrounds this portion of the city. The Plains of Abraham are located near the edge of the Promontory.

Lower Town is located at shore level, below Cap-Diamant. There are a number of historic sites, art galleries and museums in Quebec City, such as Citadelle of Quebec, Musée national des beaux-arts du Québec, Ursulines of Quebec, and Musée de la civilisation.

5. **Victoria, British Columbia:** Victoria is the capital city of British Columbia, Canada and is located on the southern tip of Vancouver Island of Canada's Pacific coast.

Victoria is about 100 kilometres (62 miles) from BC's largest city of Vancouver on the mainland. The city is about 100 kilometres (62 miles) from Seattle by airplane, ferry, or the Victoria Clipper passenger-only ferry which operates daily. Known as the "City of Gardens", Victoria is an attractive city and a popular tourism destination with a thriving technology sector that has risen to be its largest revenue-generating private industry. Victoria is a major tourism destination with over 3.5 million overnight visitors per year who add more than a billion dollars to the local economy. As well, an additional 500,000 daytime visitors arrive via cruise ships which dock at Ogden point near the city's inner Harbour.

6. **Whistler, British Columbia:** Whistler is a Canadian resort town in the southern Pacific Ranges of the Coast Mountains in the province of British Columbia, Canada, approximately 125 kilometres (78 mi) north of Vancouver and 36 km south of the town of Pemberton. Over two million people visit Whistler annually, primarily for alpine skiing and snowboarding and, in summer, mountain biking at Whistler-Blackcomb.

Whistler is located on the Sea to Sky Highway (Highway 99), which goes from the Peace Arch Border Crossing in Surrey, British Columbia to the Cariboo Highway (Highway 97)

10 kilometres north of Cache Creek, British Columbia. North of Whistler is Pemberton, British Columbia, which is about 23 kilometres north of the mountain village. Also north is Lillooet, British Columbia, which is 122 kilometres north of Whistler. South of the village is Squamish, British Columbia, about a 53 kilometres drive. Also located south is Vancouver, which is 125 kilometres south of the village.

7. **Calgary:** Calgary is a city in the province of Alberta, Canada. It is situated on the Bow River in the south of the province, in an area of foothills and prairie, and approximately 80 km (50 mi) east of the front ranges of the Canadian Rockies. The city is located in the grassland and parkland natural regions of Alberta. As of the 2011 census, the City of Calgary had a population of 1,096,833 and a metropolitan population of 1,214,839, making it the largest city in Alberta, Albert, and the third - largest municipality and fifth-largest metropolitan area in Canada.

Located 294 km (183 mi) south of Edmonton, Statistics, Canada defines the area between these cities as the "Calgary - Edmonton Corridor". Economic activity in Calgary is mostly centred on the petroleum industry and agriculture. In 1988, Calgary became the first Canadian city to host the Olympic winter Games. Calgary is located at the transition zone between the Canadian Rockies foothills and the Canadian Prairies. The city lies within the foothill's parkland natural sub-region of the parkland natural region and the foothills fescue sub- region of the grassland's natural region.

8. **Ottawa:** Ottawa is the capital of Canada, and the fourth largest city in the country. The city is located on the south bank of the Ottawa River in the Eastern portion of Southern Ontario. Ottawa borders Gatineau, Quebec, and together they form the National capital region (NCR). Founded in 1826 as by town and incorporated as "Ottawa" in 1855, the city has evolved into a political and technological centre of Canada.

Its original boundaries were expanded through numerous minor annexations and ultimately replaced by a new city incorporation and major amalgamation in 2001 which significantly increased its land area. The name "Ottawa" is derived from the Algonquin word *adauwe*, meaning "to trade". Initially an Irish and French Christian settlement, Ottawa has become a multicultural city with a diverse population.

The 2011 census had the city's population as 883,391, the census metropolitan area (CMA) population as 1,236,324, and the National Capital Region (NCR) population as 1,451,415. Mercer ranks Ottawa with the second highest quality of living of any large city in the Americas, and 14th highest in the world. It is also rated the second cleanest city in Canada, and third cleanest city in the world. In 2012, the city was ranked for the third consecutive year as the best community in Canada to live in by Money Sense.

Ottawa is situated on the south bank of the Ottawa River, and contains the mouths of the Rideau River and Rideau Canal. Across the canal to the west lies Centertown and Downtown Ottawa, which is the city's financial and commercial hub. The Rideau Canal,

which stretches 202 km (126 mi) to Kingston, Fort Henry and four Martello towers in the Kingston area was recognized as A UNESCO World Heritage site.

- 9. Banff, Alberta:** Banff is a town within Banff National Park in Alberta, Canada. It is located in Alberta's Rockies along the Trans-Canada Highway, approximately 126 km (78 mi) west of Calgary and 58 km (36 mi) east of Lake Louise. At an elevation of 1,463 m (4,800 ft), Banff is the community with the second highest elevation in Canada after Lake Louise.

The Town of Banff is the first municipality to incorporate within a Canadian national park. The town is a member of the Calgary Regional Partnership. Banff is a resort town and one of Canada's most popular tourists' destinations, known for its mountainous surroundings and hot springs. It is a destination for outdoor sports and features extensive hiking, biking scrambling and skiing areas within the area. Sunshine village, ski nor quay and Lake Louise mountain resort are the three nearby ski resorts located within the national park. It is surrounded by mountains, notably Mount Rundle, Sulphur Mountain, mount Norquay, and Cascade Mountain. The town is situated above Bow Falls near the confluence of the Bow River and Spray River.

- 10. Niagara Falls:** Niagara Falls is the collective name for three waterfalls that straddle the international border between the Canadian Province of Ontario and the U.S. State of New York. They form the southern end of the Niagara George.

From largest to smallest, the three waterfalls are the Horseshoe falls, the American falls and the Bridal Veil falls. The Horseshoe falls lie on the Canadian side and the American falls on the American side, separated by Goat Island. The smaller Bridal Veil falls are also located on the American side, separated from the other waterfalls by Luna Island. The international boundary line was originally drawn through Horseshoe Falls in 1819, but the boundary has long been in dispute due to natural erosion and construction. Located on the Niagara River, which drains Lake Erie into Lake Ontario, the combined falls form the highest flow rate of any waterfall in the worlds, with a vertical drop of more than 165 feet (50 m). Horseshoe Falls is the most powerful waterfall in North America, as measured by vertical height and also by flow rate. The falls are located 17 miles (27 km) north-northwest of Buffalo, New York and 75 miles (121 km) south-southeast of Toronto, between the twin cities of Niagara Falls, Ontario, and Niagara Falls, New York. Niagara Falls were formed when glaciers receded at the end of the Wisconsin glaciation (the last ice age), and water from the newly formed Great Lakes carved a path through the Niagara Escarpment en route to the Atlantic Ocean. While not exceptionally high, the Niagara Falls are very wide. More than six million cubic feet (168,000 m<sup>3</sup>) of water falls over the crest line every minute in high flow, and almost four million cubic feet (110,000 m<sup>3</sup>) on average. The Niagara Falls is renowned both for their beauty and as a valuable source of hydroelectric power. Managing the balance between recreational, commercial, and industrial uses has been a challenge for the stewards of the falls since the 19th century.

---

**2.6 TOURISM RESOURCES IN CANADA:**

---

Canada has a large domestic and foreign tourism industry. The second largest country in the world, Canada's incredible geographical variety is a significant tourist attractor. Much of the country's tourism is centered around Canada's four largest cities, Toronto, Montreal, Vancouver, and Ottawa, well known for their culture, diversity, as well as the many national parks and historic sites.

- **Vancouver Island:** Vancouver Island is a major Canadian tourist destination attracting millions of visitors each year.

Popular activities for tourists are whale watching, enjoying the busking in the inner harbour area and visiting world famous Butchart Gardens.

- **Long Beach** (Pacific Rim National Park) and the communities of Tofino and Ucluelet are popular tourist areas. Tofino, a town of only a few thousand, hosts more than one million visitors each year. Many new resorts are being built in the area to accommodate surfers, beach lovers, storm watchers and golfers.

Whale **watching** is common along the coastal areas of BC as is Pacific storm watching along the west coast of Vancouver Island during the winter months.

- **Wine tours** are common in the Okanagan Valley, BC's wine and orchard country. The Okanagan valley area has some of the best beaches and warmest summer temperatures in Canada, as well as Canada's only hot desert around the town of Osoyoos. There are 53 golf courses and two major ski resorts in the valley.

British Columbia is also a popular location for the production of many Hollywood films; it is the third largest film center in North America only trailing California and New York.

- **Saskatchewan:** Saskatoon is home to the largest branch of the Western Development Museum, which houses important artifacts and recreations of the early settlement of the Canadian prairies.
- **Manitoba:** Manitoba was the 5th province to enter confederation in 1870. The province is home to many lakes and rivers with over 14.5% of the land area covered by lakes. This offers many opportunities for outdoor recreation, hunting, fishing, boating and some of the finest beaches in North America. The province is a four season travel destination offering cross-country and downhill skiing opportunities, as well as many miles of groomed ski-doo trails. Churchill on the Hudson Bay is a popular attraction due to the large polar bear and beluga whale population. The capital city Winnipeg, with a population of near 700,000, offers many cultural and artistic events, museums and year-round festivals. Other cities with more than 10,000 people are Brandon, Thompson, Portage la Prairie, Selkirk and Steinbach.

- **Moraine Lake:** The Moraine Lake is situated near to the valley of the ten peaks. The valley is an important skiing destination for tourists. It has several world-class ski resorts.  
*Moraine Lake and the valley of the Ten Peaks*

---

**Other sites of interest in the province:**

---

- Canadian Fossil Discovery centre in Morden
- Commonwealth air training plan Museum in Brandon
- Lower fort Garry in St. Andrews
- Manitoba agricultural Museum in Austin
- Manitoba Amateur radio Museum in Austin
- Manitoba Antique automobile Museum in Elkhorn
- Marine Museum of Manitoba in Selkirk
- Mennonite heritage village in Steinbach
- New Iceland heritage Museum in Gimli
- Oak Hammock Marsh in Stonewall
- Sam Waller Museum in The Pas, Manitoba

---

**Festivals and Events:**

---

- Festival du Voyageur held every February in Winnipeg
  - Folklorama held annually every August in Winnipeg
  - Jazz Winnipeg festival
  - Red River Exhibition held annually late June in Winnipeg
  - Winnipeg, Fringe Theatre festival
  - Winnipeg International Writers festival
  - Winnipeg Music festival
  - Winnipeg Folk festival
- **Ontario is the most populous and second-largest** province in Canada. Southern Ontario is home to the National Capital, Ottawa and Canada's largest city, Toronto, which is the provincial capital and one of the most multicultural cities in the world. The forests and numerous lakes of central Ontario and Northern Ontario also provide popular hiking and camping destinations.  
*The CN Tower is a major tourist attraction in Toronto*
  - **Quebec:** Quebec, a majority Francophone province, is a major tourist draw. Quebec City is a taste of old Quebec, with Chateau Frontenac, reminiscent of France, in the New World, and a UNESCO World Heritage site. Montreal, the second largest francophone city in the world, has several tourist attractions.
  - **New Brunswick:** New Brunswick is renowned for its sandy beaches especially along the Northumberland Strait which in summer has the warmest water north of Virginia. Saint

John, The largest city in New Brunswick and the oldest Incorporated in Canada at the mouth of the St. John River. Steeped with history from Irish immigration to a great fire in the 19th century. The port city has numerous Victorian houses and amazing 18th and 19th century architecture in the Uptown area.

- **Moncton:** Moncton the province's second largest city and the recreational center of the province. With tourist attractions such as,
  - Magnetic Hill Zoo
  - Palais Crystal Palace
  - Magic Mountain water Park
  - Tidal bore , twice daily on Petitcodiac River
  - Cape Enrage
  - Kouchibouguac National Park
  - New Brunswick Potato Museum
- **Fredericton:** Fredericton the province's capital and third largest city, is a cultural and educational centre housing the University of New Brunswick and St. Thomas University, and is filled with neighborhoods featuring large Victorian-style homes. Whale watching and the Confederation Bridge to Prince Edward Island are also draws.
- **Prince Edward Island:** Prince Edward Island (PEI) is the birthplace of Lucy Maude Montgomery's character, and a recreation of her literary home serves as a museum to the character. PEI is also famous around the world for its potato farms and rich red mud beaches.
- **Newfoundland and Labrador:** Newfoundland and Labrador attracts many tourists because of its icebergs and Fjords It was settled by Leif Ericsson, an Icelandic sailor, in 1000 A.D. Remains of this settlement can still be found in L'Anse aux Meadows, northern Newfoundland. Europeans settled in 1497, headed by an expedition by John Cabot.
- **Nova Scotia:** Nova Scotia is known for its lovely scenery; most renowned is the Cape Breton Highlands. The historic 18th century Fortress Louisburg is also a major draw.
- **Halifax:** Halifax the provincial capital has several major attractions, such as the Pier 21 museum, Citadel Hill, and the Public Gardens. The Halifax Metro Centre is home to numerous events both sport-related and otherwise, such as the Nova Scotia International Tattoo. Downtown Halifax is considered the prime tourism district in Halifax, with most historic attractions located here as well as the waterfront harbor walk, a continuous 3 km stretch of boardwalk home to street vendors, entertainers, the Casino Nova Scotia, and the Maritime Museum of the Atlantic. Downtown Halifax is also the location of several major hotels.

- **Yukon Territory:** With its history of the Klondike Gold Rush, First Nations culture and spectacular wilderness, the Yukon Territory has an extensive tourism industry, welcoming over 300,000 visitors a year. Tourist attractions include the gold rush town of Dawson City, Kluane national park and reserve and a number of attractions in Whitehorse and other communities. Opportunities for wilderness adventure tourism and ecotourism abound (hiking, canoeing, kayaking, skiing, dog-sledding), but the territory is also served by a well-developed road network, with most places accessible by road.

---

**2.7 TOP 10 PLACES IN CANADA:**

---

**1. Lake Louise, Alberta:** The picture says it all. Deep in the Canadian Rockies a large turquoise lake trickles from the thousand's year-old glacier in the distance. The Fairmont Hotel is world class and books visitors' months in advance. But don't let this deter you from visiting; there are many camp-grounds that make visiting fun and affordable.

**2. Banff, Alberta:** Banff is great but a little over-crowded at times. Best to take in the nature experience during the off seasons. But it doesn't matter what time of year it is, there is always stuff to see and do in Banff. Having been to Banff many times, I have never gone and not seen either a bear, elk, deer or mountain goat. With the guaranteed wildlife sightings, you will always enjoy your stay at the Banff Springs hotel. Be sure to take advantage of their outdoor hot-springs while you are there. Reservations at the hotel are made months in advance but don't fret because there are many other hotels in the area.

**3. Montreal:** Montreal is perhaps my all-time favourite place to just walk around by myself. No other city will allow you to be on a hill overlooking the city from above; shop at fancy French boutiques; dine at some of the best restaurants in the world; see old historic buildings and modern skyscrapers; enjoy a vibrant nightlife; and watch the sun rise and set at the port - all within walking distance. You will feel as if you have walked into a different dimension. Being the world's second largest French speaking city (second only to Paris) some would compare it to France. I on the other hand believe that Montreal is in a league of its own.

**4. Quebec City, Quebec:** Visiting Quebec City is like taking a tour of France in North America. Quebec culture is rich and unique from the rest of Canada, and no-where is it as evident as it is in Quebec City. The world-famous Chateaux Frontenac overlooks the St. Lawrence River on a cliff that was once a French Fort. The Old-City is contained in a stone wall that once protected the city from the British Navy. The City Fortress makes Quebec City one of the last walled cities in the world.

**5. Niagara Falls, Ontario:** It's one of those unfortunates 'luck of the draw' things because the majority of the falls are technically in the United States. This would be fine except that to see it, you have to be on the Canadian side. That's why Niagara Falls lands on Canada's

Top-Ten list. To get to the other side there is a pedestrian bridge that links Canada with the United States without the inconvenience of border patrols, yeah.

This tourist town is great for sightseeing and if you happen to be in Toronto, Niagara Falls is not far. Niagara Falls is also a popular place to get married, competing with Las Vegas for favourite wedding destinations. Niagara Falls was also rated as the World's Most Romantic Place.

**6. Vancouver, British Columbia:** Vancouver is a great place to see and do anything and everything. You can enjoy the city's night life, ski at Whistler and go whale-watching along the coast. Camping, hiking, and boating are also just a few of the things you can do when in town. If you love the outdoors and want to see some real wildlife, Vancouver should be on your itinerary.

**7. Churchill, Manitoba:** Churchill, Manitoba is a small town in northern Manitoba on the shores of the Hudson Bay. The town is the Polar Bear Capital of the World (sightings are year-round), Beluga Whale Capital of the World (sightings from late June to late August), and one of the best places to catch a glimpse of an Aurora Borealis or Northern-Lights (sightings from late November through to late March). No-one ever forgets a visit to Churchill. It's the best place to connect to the many wonders of Mother Nature.

**8. Kelowna, British Columbia:** Where do Canadians go on vacation? Kelowna, BC. In the heart of the Canadian Rockies is the Okanagan Valley, a river-valley that has some of Canada's best weather. Warm in the summer and mild in the winter; the most you can ask for in the Great White North.

The valley produces Canada's world-famous B.C. apples (illegal in the U.S.) and wine. The Valley has a marina for the avid boaters and many golf courses. Relaxing at the beach or sitting on the porch of a lakeside cottage is everyone's idea of the perfect destination.

**9. Ottawa, Ontario:** Ottawa is the Capital City of Canada and a great place to soak in Canadian culture. The Changing of the Guard on Parliament Hill or the RCMP march are always popular sights, along with some world class museums.

There are also many parks and bike paths that make summer outdoors fun. The winters aren't bad either. The Rideau Canal, which connects the Ottawa River to the Great Lakes for leisure boaters, makes for the longest skating rink in the world when it freezes.

**10. Prince Edward Island:** Green pastures and the distinct red-soil cliffs make Prince Edward Island a great destination for travellers who are just looking for some relaxation or a fun day at the beach. Take a car to get around; the island is not big so you could see everything in a day.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS:**

---

- Write a short note on variety of tourism products in Canada.
- What are the tourist attractions of Canada?
- Make a list of top 10 biggest cities of Canada.
- Indicate the 10 biggest cities in the maps of Canada.
- Indicate the top 10 places to visit in the map of Canada.
- What are the tourism resources of Canada?
- Give a brief history of Canada.

---

**2.8 LETS UP SUM UP:**

---

This unit gives ideas about the brief history of Canada. After going through this unit, we have understood that which are the important cities, their geographical location, culture, environment, history, economy and government etc. We came to know the major attractions /tourist destination and their different dimensions in the country. This unit gives complete information that makes Canada a most preferred destination all over the world.

This unit ends with the description of top places to visit in Canada, which help to choose a destination as per the interest of the tourists.

---

**2.9 CLUES TO ANSWERS:**

---

- Refer Sec.2.4
- Refer Sec.2.7
- Refer Sec.2.5
- Refer Sec.2.5
- Refer Sec.2.7
- Refer Sec.2.6
- Refer Sec.2.3

---

**REFERENCES:**

---

- Francis, RD; Jones, Richard; Smith, Donald B (2009). Journey: A history of Canada. Nelson Education. ISBN 978-0-17-644244-6
- Statistics Canada (November, 2011). Canada year book, Federal Publications (Queen of Canada). Catalogue no 11-402-X (ISSN 0068-8142).
- Magocsi, Paul R (1999). Encyclopedia of Canada-peoples. Society of Ontario, University of Toronto Press. ISBN 978-0-8020-2938-6.

- Andrew Cohen (May 8, 2007). *The unfinished Canadian: The people we are*. McClelland & Stewart. ISBN 978-0-7710-2181-7.
- Wright, J.V (2009), "A history of the native people of Canada: Early and middle Archaic Complexes". Canadian museum of Civilization. Retrieved May 23, 2011.
- "Territorial evolution", *Atlas of Canada*. Natural Resources Canada, Retrieved, May 23, 2011.
- *Canada history, Country Profiles*. Commonwealth Secretariat. Retrieved May 23, 2011.
- "Building a nation". *Canadian Atlas*. Canadian Geographic. Retrieved May 23, 2011.

**Unit-3****Mexico-History, Different Tourism Products, Biggest Cities and  
Top Places in Mexico**

---

**Structure:**

**3.1 Objectives**

**3.2 Introduction**

**3.3 History of Mexico**

**3.4 Variety of Tourism Products in Mexico**

**3.5 Mexico's Ten Biggest Cities**

**3.6 Tourism Resources in Mexico**

**3.7 Top Ten Places in Mexico**

**3.8 Lets up Sum Up**

**3.9 Clues to Answers**

**3.10 References**

---

**3.1 OBJECTIVES:**

---

The aim of this unit is to provide information of Mexico, Tourism point of view. This unit will guide to the student about the Geographical location and all Tourism aspects of Mexico, who attract not only the domestic tourists but also the foreign tourists in terms of tourism receipts and tourist arrivals. After going through Unit 3 on Mexico, You will understand the following:

- Geographical location of the country
- Historical richness of the Country
- Importance of Culture in development of Tourism
- Characteristics of Tourism industry in Mexico
- Natural attractions in the Country
- Important tourist cities in the Country
- Top tourist attractions of the Country

---

**3.2 INTRODUCTION:**

---

Unit-3 makes an effort to gives the idea to the students about the Mexico as a tourist destination and helps them to understand the various dimensions of the Tourism attractions of the country. This unit attempts to through the light on the important cities, Geographical aspects, Attractions (Natural and Man-made), culture and its all aspects, environment, history, economy, government etc. in Mexico. Some interesting facts about Mexico:

- **Name:** United Mexican States
- **Population:** 115,296,767 (2012 estimate)
- **Capital:** Mexico City
- **Language:** Spanish
- **Religion:** Roman Catholicism (82.7 %)
- **Government:** Federal Presidential Constitutional Republic
- **Currency:** Peso (MXN)

---

**3.3 HISTORY OF MEXICO:**

---

The earliest human remains in Mexico are chips of stone tools found near campfire remains in the Valley of Mexico and radiocarbon-dated to circa 23,000 years ago. Mexico is the site of the domestication of maize and beans which caused a transition from Paleo-Indian hunter-gatherers to sedentary agricultural villages beginning around 7000 BCE.

Mexico is located in the southern part of North America. The country is bounded by the U.S. to the north, Guatemala and Belize to its south, the North Pacific Ocean to its west and the Gulf of Mexico to its east. The country covers an area of 761,606 sq miles.

Mexico is a nation, which is situated in the southern region of North America. The country shares its borders with the U.S. in the north, Guatemala and Belize in its south, the North Pacific Ocean in its west and the Gulf of Mexico (including the Bahia de Campeche or the Bay of Campeche) in its east. The overall area of the country is 761,606 sq miles (1,972,550 km<sup>2</sup>). It is approximately 3 times the area of Texas. The capital of this country is Mexico City, which is situated in the south-central territory of the country.

Among the earliest complex civilizations in Mexico was the Olmec culture which flourishes on the Gulf Coast from around 1500 BCE. Olmec cultural traits diffused through Mexico into other formative era cultures in Chiapas, Oaxaca and the Valley of Mexico. The formative period saw the spread of distinct religious and symbolic traditions, as well as artistic and architectural complexes. In the subsequent pre-classical period, the Maya and Zapotec civilizations developed complex centers at Calakmul and Monte Alban respectively. During this period the first true Mesoamerican writing systems were developed in the Epi-Olmec and the Zapotec cultures, and the Mesoamerican writing tradition reached its height in the Classic Maya Hieroglyphic script.

During the early post-classic Central Mexico was dominated by the Toltec culture, Oaxaca by the Mixtec and the lowland Maya area had important centers at Chichen Itza and Mayapan. Towards the end of the post-Classic period the Aztecs of Central Mexico built a tributary empire covering most of central Mexico. The Aztecs were noted for practicing human sacrifice on a large scale. The distinct Mesoamerican cultural tradition ended with the Spanish conquest in the 16th century, and over the next centuries Mexican indigenous cultures were gradually subjected to Spanish colonial rule.

Mexico officially the United Mexican States, is a federal constitutional republic in North America. It is bordered on the north by the United States; on the south and west by the Pacific Ocean; on the southeast by Guatemala, Belize, and the Caribbean Sea; and on the east by the Gulf of Mexico. Covering almost two million square kilometres (over 760,000 sq mi), Mexico is the fifth largest country in the Americas by total area and the 13<sup>th</sup> largest independent nation in the world. With an estimated population of over 113 million, it is the world's eleventh most populous country and the most populous Spanish

speaking country. Mexico is a federation comprising thirty-one states and a Federal district, the capital city.

In Pre-Columbian Mexico many cultures matured into advanced civilizations such as the Olmec, the Toltec, the Teotihuacan, the Zapotec, the Maya and the Aztec before first contact with Europeans. In 1521, Spain conquered and colonized the territory from its base in Mexico –Tenochtitlan, which was administered as the Viceroyalty of New Spain. This territory would eventually become Mexico following recognition of the colony's independence in 1821. The post-independence period was characterized by economic instability, the Mexican-American war and territorial cession to the United States, a civil war, two Empires and a domestic dictatorship. The latter led to the Mexican Revolution in 1910, which culminated with the promulgation of the 1917 constitution and the emergence of the country's current political system, Elections held in July 2000 marked the first time that an opposition party won the presidency from the Institutional Revolutionary party.

Mexico has one of the world's largest economies, and is considered both a regional power and middle power. In addition, Mexico was the first Latin American member of the Organization for Economic Co-Operation and Development (OECD, since 1994), and considered an upper-middle income country by the World Bank. Mexico is considered a newly industrialized country and an emerging power. It has the fourteenth largest nominal GDP and the eleventh largest GDP by purchasing power parity. The economy is strongly linked to those of its North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) partners, especially the United States of America. Mexico ranks sixth in the world and first in the Americas by number of UNESCO World Heritage Sites with 31, and in 2007 was the tenth most visited country in the world with 21.4 million international arrivals per year. In the 2011 Travel and Tourism Competitiveness Index (TTCI) report, which is a measurement of the factors that make it attractive to developing business in the travel and tourism industry of individual countries, Mexico was ranked 43th place in the world's ranking, which is fourth in the Americas. In considering simply the sub index measuring human, cultural, and natural resources, Mexico ranks in the 13th place on a worldwide level, 10th for the natural resources criteria and 19th for the cultural criteria. The TTCI report also notes Mexico's main weaknesses, which includes ground transport infrastructure (ranked 79th), insufficient health and hygiene (ranked 64th) and safety and security concerns (ranked 128th).

Tourism in Mexico is a very large industry. Mexico has been traditionally among the most visited countries in the world according to the World Tourism Organization and it is the most visited country in the Americas, after the United States. The most notable attractions are the Meso-American ruins, cultural festivals, colonial cities, nature reserves and the beach resorts. The nation's temperate climate and unique culture – a fusion of the European and the Meso-American – make Mexico an attractive destination. The peak tourism seasons in the country are during December and the mid-Summer, with brief

surges during the week before Easter and Spring break, when many of the beach resort sites become popular destinations for college students from the United States. The majority of tourists come to Mexico from the United States and Canada. Other visitors come from Europe and Asia. A small number of tourists also come from other Latin American countries. There is also a burgeoning domestic tourism trade as a growing affluent middle class begins to go on holiday within their own country. While Mexico's middle / lower class usually promotes national tourism, the middle/higher class usually prefers to travel overseas. Mexico was one of the oldest countries in Latin America to support railway expansion.

---

**3.4 VARIETY OF TOURISM PRODUCTS:**

---

- **Cultural and Historical tourism:** The most interesting historical site in Mexico City is the Zocalo (The Main Square) where numerous events took place during the course of Mexican history. The Zocalo was often visited by Viceroyalty during the colonial period and by presidents after the War of Independence. Museum of Anthropology has most important collection of archaeological pieces in the country, displayed in 11 exhibition halls showing the richness of Mexico's pre-Hispanic past. In Mexico City there are three essential archeological sites in Mexico City: Templo Mayor is a series of pyramidal constructions built one over the other. The Plaza de las Tres Culturas in Tlatelolco three facets of Mexican architecture: Cuicuilco Pyramid half hidden by the lava 300 years ago. Chapultepec Castle dates from 1785 when the viceroy Galvez ordered that a town be built on top of the hill. It was used at the residence of the governors of the moment, the Military College and now houses the National Museum of History; it has been remodeled several times since its existence. National Museum of Art - Opposite Plaza de Tolsa stands this fascinating construction built between 1904 and 1911 to house the Secretariat of State for Communications. In 1982 it was turned into a museum to show the plastic arts in Mexico. The National Palace is the main seat of political power. Inside the Palace are murals by Diego Rivera on the theme of "The Epic of Mexico" and another on the principal Mesoamerican cultures that flourished in Mexico before the arrival of the Spaniards.
- **Adventure tourism and ecotourism:** Bioplaneta is a network of Mexican sustainable cooperatives that offer eco-tourism activities in rural areas from the states of Oaxaca and Veracruz. Here, you will be able to enjoy beautiful natural landscapes, observe a great variety of flora and fauna, take a bicycle, kayak and boat ride, camp in the middle of the jungle or at the beach, get a massage and submerge in clay baths, buy local handcrafts and attend workshops about environmental rehabilitation and traditional medicine. Furthermore, you can learn to harvest cocoa and organic coffees, rehab ecosystems or set crocodiles and turtles free.

Oaxaca and Veracruz are home to a good number of self-managed eco-tourism communities. In Oaxaca, they are located in La Ventanilla, Mazunte, San Rafael

Toltepec, El Tomatal, Laguna de Chacahua National Park, the Pueblos Mancomunados and Soyaltepec Island. In Veracruz, they are located mainly in the Tuxtlas region, home to the Tuxtla Eco-tourism Community Network, such as the Catemaco communities.

Chiapas also possesses a great number of self-managed communities, located deep into the jungle, that offer an experience full of colors, flavors, nature and fun. Naha and Metzabok, which in Nathual means "the place of the black man", is good example. Located in the heart of the Lacandon jungle, in the municipality of Ocosingo, these indigenous communities, some of the oldest throughout the jungle, are surrounded by an amazing biodiversity. Here, you can setup camp, visit the archeological sites, take guided tours through the local sites and do many other activities.

Tailor makes itineraries incorporating a huge variety of activities such as trekking, rock climbing, river and ocean kayaking, rafting, snorkeling and diving, deep-sea fishing, blue-water sailing, whale-watching, surfing, and horse riding. Whatever your interests that involve the great outdoors, we can introduce you to many memorable adventures in Mexico.

According to Mexico's Tourism Secretariat (Sectur) adventure tourism and ecotourism in Mexico generate US\$52 million annually. From soft to hardcore, adventure tourism in Mexico takes many forms.

- **Alternative Tourism:** This type of tourism allows you to visit indigenous communities and become steeped in their traditions; likewise, it is ideal to get close to nature in a respectful and kind way. Many communities offer visitors lodging (usually in cabins), food, guided tours and workshops, among other activities, that emphasize their commitment to nature and fair commerce. Locals are usually very hospitable with guests, and they make every effort to provide them a comfortable and pleasant vacation. The Mexican Caribbean is another very important destination for alternative tourism. The Yucatan Peninsula is home to the town of Muchucuxcah, a cooperative that offers a diversity of cultural and natural activities. Visitors stay at cabins with palm roofs built by locals. In the neighboring community of Chan Chimila, one can stay with Mayan families, who will get us engaged in their daily activities and will offer traditional dishes that originate from sustainable agricultural practices. Here, we can learn how they weave hammocks, carve wood or make tortillas, and we can also participate in ceremonies and rituals, and learn the basics of the Mayan language. The scantily visited Caribbean beaches are a real paradise for those who like to get away from the crowds and the conventional tourism. Here, locals manage the lodging, food and other services offered.
- **An exceptional experience:** Visiting a town surrounded by mountains, or a community buried deep in the jungle, is a memory that will last a lifetime. In these places, you will experience the region's beauties, will be able to savor homemade traditional dishes, get

to know the sound of indigenous languages, admire and buy handcrafts, witness ceremonies and rituals, and experience many other things. Without a doubt, these communities have a lot to offer.

- **An escape from the city:** For the Mexico City residents that wish to spend a special weekend but cannot get too far away from the city, the best option is the community of Huehucoyotl, in Tepoztlan, Morelos. Founded in 1982, this self-titled “eco-village” offers eco-homes; and the locals, activists of many nationalities, offer workshops on organic gardening, solar energy, ecological buildings, holistic health and community development. To book a room in one of the 14 homes, you need to get in touch with the community members in advance. If you wish to live a unique experience, support the development of rural communities and do your part in the conservation of the natural environment, this type of tourism is the best option, without a doubt. Although all of our tours include several layers of activity that strike a balance between planned excursions and free time for our clients, the following tour categories lend themselves to specific interests around which we will plan the tour itinerary. Please select the type of tour that most closely describes your interests.
- **Culinary Tourism:** Well designing and leading international gastronomy tours for culinary students, professional chefs, and food enthusiasts. The tours seek to meet the level of hands-on participation expected by the tour organizer, from passive to rigorous involvement. The tours usually include broad experiences such as fresh food market excursions, organic coffee finca tours, mescal distilling, chocolate making, hands-on cooking classes, and a range of dining experiences featuring both traditional and modern Mexican cuisine.
- **Education Tourism:** Create tours for college or university students looking to gain a greater insight into their area of interest through immersion. They offer custom tours focusing on areas such as the Spanish language, Mexican history, native Indian art, and modern and ancient architecture.
- **Special Interest Tourism:** Mexico offers a host of tours that have people with special interests in mind. Whether your interest is in learning how to make traditional handcrafts, bird watching and wildlife, pottery making, ecology, preparing Mexican food and beverages, sport fishing, or experiencing ancient cultures, they can custom design a special interest tour for you.

---

### **3.5 MEXICO'S TEN BIGGEST CITIES:**

---

1. **Mexico City:** Everywhere you go in Mexico City, you will find the old and new living in harmony side-by-side. It's a rare thing to be able to stand at both the center of history and of present-day activity. Such an experience awaits you in the Zocalo, the historic heart of Mexico City. The Zocalo is just one of many amazing spots in this vibrant and ever-

changing city, though. Chapultepec Park, the largest park within a city in the world, is a fantastic example.

The park is in places exactly as it was centuries ago, but elsewhere in the park you will find a host of entertainments for adults, kids and the entire family. From mime troupes to magic shows, there's something for everyone.

History shows up everywhere in the city, with much of the modern area laid out on top of one or more past incarnations. Right now, there are at least a dozen major working archaeological sites within the city limits and speaking of the past, the floating gardens, which have been in existence for seven centuries, since the time of the Aztecs. Knowledgeable guides can brief on everything from the history of the gardens to how to grow the plants you'll find there.

Mexico City offers everything a modern, savvy traveler or family vacationer could ever want. The array of restaurants and culinary options is staggering, and the nightlife is some of the best in the world. From British-style pubs to mariachi clubs, from sports bars to romantic hideaways, your nights will only end when you want them to.

- 2. Iztapalapa:** Iztapalapa is one of the Federal districts of Mexico city's 16 boroughs, located on the east side of the entity. The borough is named after and centered on the formerly independent municipality of Iztapalapa, which is officially called Iztapalapa de Cuitlahuac for disambiguation purposes. The rest is made up of a number of other communities which are governed by the city of Iztapalapa.

Iztapalapa is the most populous borough of Mexico City, and it is also the most populous municipality in the country. Over 90% of its territory is urbanized. The borough transitioned from a rural area with some farms and canals as late as the 1970s, to an area with the only green areas in parks and almost all of its people employed in commerce, services and industry. However, the borough is home of one of Mexico City's major cultural events, the annual passion play in which 450 borough residents participate and about 2 million attend as spectators.

- 3. Ecatepec:** Ecatepec is a city in the State of Mexico and the seat of Ecatepec de Morelos Municipality; however, both the city and the municipality are often known simply as "Ecatepec". The name "Ecatepec" is derived from Nahuatl, and means "windy hill" or "hill devoted to Ehecatl". It was also an alternative name or invocation to Quetzalcoatl. "Morelos" is the last name of Jose Maria Morelos, a hero of the Mexican War of Independence.
- 4. Guadalajara:** Guadalajara is the capital of the Mexican state of Jalisco. The city is located in the central region of Jalisco in the western-pacific area of Mexico. The municipality is the second most densely populated one in Mexico; the first being Ciudad Nezahualcoyotl in State of Mexico.

The city's economy is based on industry, especially information technology with a large number of international firms having manufacturing facilities in the Guadalajara Metro Area. Other, more traditional industries, such as shoes, textiles and food processing are also important contributing factors.

Guadalajara is the cultural center of Mexico, considered by most to be the home of Mariachi music and host to a number of large-scale cultural events such as the International Film Festival of Guadalajara and the Guadalajara International Book Fair and a number of globally renowned cultural events which draw international crowds. It is also home to the Guadalajara football/soccer club, one of the two most popular in Mexico. This city was named American Capital of Culture in 2005. Guadalajara hosted the 2011 Pan American Games. Guadalajara is the 10th largest city in Latin America in terms of population, urban area and Gross Domestic Product.

- 5. Puebla:** The city of Puebla is the seat of the Municipality of Puebla, the capital of the state of Puebla and one of the five most important Spanish colonial cities in Mexico. Being a colonial era planned city, it is located to the east of Mexico City and west of Mexico's main Atlantic port, Veracruz, on the main route between the two in Central Mexico.

This valley was not populated in the 16th century as in the pre-Hispanic period; this area was primarily used to the "flower war" between a numbers of populations. Due to its history and architectural styles ranging from Renaissance to Mexican Baroque, the city was named a World heritage Site in 1987.

The city is also famous for mole poblano, chiles en nogada and Talavera pottery. However, most of its economy is based on industry. Being both the fourth largest city of Mexico and the fourth largest Metropolitan City in Mexico, the city serves as one of the main hubs for eastern central Mexico.

- 6. Ciudad Juarez:** The city lies on the Rio Grande (Rio Bravo del Norte), south of El Paso, Texas. El Paso and Ciudad Juarez comprise the second largest bi-national metropolitan area on the Mexico-United States border (after San Diego-Tijuana). Ciudad Juarez is one of the fastest growing cities in the world despite being called "the most violent zone in the world outside of declared war zones" in 2009.

- 7. Tijuana:** Tijuana is the largest city on the Baja California Peninsula and center of the Tijuana metropolitan area, part of the international San Diego-Tijuana metropolitan area. An industrial and financial center of Mexico, Tijuana exerts a strong influence on economics, education, culture, art, and politics. As the city has become a leading center in the country, so has the surrounding metropolitan area, a major industrial and paramount metropolis in northwestern Mexico. Currently one of the fastest growing metropolitan areas in Mexico, Tijuana maintains global city status.

On the Gold Coast of Baja California, Tijuana is the municipal seat, cultural, and commercial center of Tijuana Municipality, covering 23.5% of the municipality. The city is the most visited border city in the globe; sharing an approximate 24-kilometre-long border (15 mi) with its sister city San Diego, over fifty million people annually cross the border between these two cities. This metropolitan crossing makes the San Ysidro Port of Entry the busiest land-border crossing in the world. It is estimated that the two border crossing stations between the cities proper of San Diego and Tijuana account for 300,000 daily border crossings alone.

Tijuana is the 29<sup>th</sup> largest city in the Americas and is the westernmost city in Mexico. According to the 2010 census, the Tijuana metropolitan area was the fifth-largest in Mexico, with a population of 1,784,034. The international metropolitan region was estimated to be just over five million in 2009 and approximately 5,105,769 in 2010, making it the third largest metropolitan area in the Californias, 19<sup>th</sup> largest metropolitan area in the Americas, and the largest bi-national conurbation that is shared between US and Mexico.

8. **Nezahualcoyotl:** Nezahualcoyotl meaning "Coyote in fast" or "Coyote who Fasts") (April 28, 1402 – June 4, 1472) was a philosopher, warrior, architect, poet and ruler (Tlatoani) of the city-state of Texcoco in pre-Columbian Mexico. Nezahualcoyotl designed a code of law based on the division of power, which created the councils of finance, war, justice and culture (the last actually called the council of music).

Unlike other high-profile Mexican figures from the century preceding the Spanish Conquest, Nezahualcoyotl was not an Aztec; his people were the Acolhua, another Nahuatl people settled in the eastern part of the Valley of Mexico, settling on the eastern side of Lake Texcoco.

9. **Gustavo A. Madero, D.F.:** Gustavo A. Madero is one of the 16 delegaciones (boroughs) into which Mexico's Federal District is divided. Founded as "Villa de Guadalupe" in 1563, it became the city of "Villa de Guadalupe Hidalgo" in 1828, and finally a delegations in 1931; as such, it was named after Gustavo A. Madero, the brother and fellow revolutionary of President Francisco I. Madero. The area houses the Basílica de Guadalupe, the shrine of Our Lady of Guadalupe at the foot of Tepeyac Hill, where Roman Catholics believe the Virgin Mary appeared to the indigenous Mexican Juan Diego Cuauhtlatoatzin in 1531.

Being the northern-most borough, the Northern Central Bus Station (Terminal Central del Norte) is located here, providing constant bus runs to all major cities in the northern and western part of the country. The Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, ending the Mexican-American War of 1846–48 was signed here.

10. **Leon:** Leon is a city in the Mexican state of Guanajuato. Its first-class services and hotel industry make it one of the most important centers in Mexico with numerous

opportunities for entertainment, gastronomy, leisure activities, arts and recreations. It is also considered one of the most environmentally friendly cities in Mexico and has a high number of cyclists, in part because of the integration a network of bike lanes into the SIT system.

León has a first class public transport system. In 2011 it received an honorable mention in the "Sustainable Transport Award 2011" along with Guangzhou, China beating San Francisco, California, Zurich and Switzerland. According to the "Future Cities" of the British. The financial times newspaper, Leon ranks first in large Latin American cities with regard to cost-effectiveness.

---

### **3.6 TOURISM RESOURCES IN MEXICO**

---

Tourism in Mexico is a very large industry. Mexico has been traditionally among the most visited countries of the world, according to the World Tourism Organization and it is the most visited country in the Americas, after the United States. The most notable attractions are the Meso American ruins, cultural festivals, colonial cities, nature reserves and the beach resorts.

Mexico continues to be one of the most popular destinations for American tourists. From the sands of its many resorts on the Caribbean and the Pacific, to the cultural bonanza of its cities and states in the interior, Mexico has much to offer the traveler. The crime situation in several areas of Mexico, primarily along its northern border, has received much coverage in the media in recent years, and with good reason. Because of this violence the U.S. Department of State has had a long-standing advisory on travel to Mexico.

On the other hand, this doesn't mean that the entire country is unsafe. According to the U.S. Government, millions of U.S. citizens safely visit Mexico each year and about one million Americans live there. Like them, travelers can greatly enhance their safety by using some common sense while traveling in Mexico, or anywhere in the world for that matter.

Mexico is not only beautiful, culturally enriching and easily accessible; it provides a broad range of options for almost any budget. For those travelers who desire to explore, or just relax on its beaches, here are the top tourism destinations in Mexico, as reported by the Mexico Tourism Board.

The coastlines of Mexico harbor many stretches of beaches that are frequented by sun bathers and other visitors. On the Yucatán peninsula, one of the most popular beach destinations is the resort town of Cancun, especially among university students during spring break. Just offshore is the beach island of Isla Mujeres, and to the east is the Isla Holbox. To the south of Cancun is the coastal strip called Riviera Maya which includes

the beach town of Playa del Carmen and the ecological parks of Xcaret and Xel-Ha. A day trip to the south of Cancun is the historic port of Tulum. In addition to its beaches, the town of Tulum is notable for its cliff-side Mayan ruins.

On the Pacific coast is the notable tourist destination of Acapulco. Once the destination for the rich and famous, the beaches have become crowded and the shores are now home to many multi-story hotels and vendors. Acapulco is home to renowned cliff divers: trained divers who leap from the side of a vertical cliff into the surf below. *Cabo San Lucas*

Along the coast to the south of Acapulco are the surfing beaches of Puerto Escondido, the snorkeling harbor beach of Puerto Ángel, and the naturist beaches of Zipolite. To the north of Acapulco is the resort town of Ixtapa and the neighboring fishing town of Zihuatanejo. Further to the north are the wild and rugged surfing beaches of the Michoacán coast.

Along the central and north Pacific coast, the biggest draws are beaches of Mazatlan city and the resort town of Puerto Vallarta. Less frequented is the sheltered cove of Bahía de Navidad, the beach towns of Bahía Kino, and the black sands of Cuyutlan. San Carlos, home of the Playa los Algodones (Cotton Beach), is a winter draw, especially for retirees.

At the southern tip of the Baja California peninsula is the resort town of Cabo San Lucas, a town noted for its beaches and marlin fishing. Further north along the Sea of Cortés is the Bahía de La Concepción, another beach town known for its sports fishing. Closer to the United States border is the weekend draw of San Felipe, Baja California.

---

### 3.7 TOP 10 PLACES IN MEXICO:

---

**1. Cancun, Riviera Maya, Cozumel and Isla Mujeres:** If you're looking for sun and beach, look no further – Cancun is consistently ranked number one time and again by Orbitz and Travelocity as America's choice in international vacation destinations. Cancun and the neighboring treasures of Holbox, Isla Mujeres, Cozumel, Isla Contoy, and the small, fisherman village of Puerto Morelos each year welcome over 3 million visitors. In the state of Quintana Roo almost everything focuses on water activities, including jet skiing, snorkeling and scuba diving, the latter along the Mesoamerican Barrier Reef System, the second longest in the world.

While the beach and hotel pools are the major draws to the Cancun and Riviera Maya regions, travelers also lured by attractions such as the Under Water Museum; the area's culinary, nightlife and shopping experiences; and the popular archeological sites of Tulum, Chichen Itza and Coba.

**2. Jim Ferri:** With its reputation for art, culture, shopping, recreation and cuisine, Mexico City attracts more than 12 million visitors every year. The city enjoys a lively and diverse

cultural lifestyle, with much to discover in its many historic buildings, museums, food and craft markets and art galleries. It is home to world-class hotels, convention and meeting facilities, restaurants, and performance venues, including the Zocalo square, Chapultepec Park, more than 100 museums. Popular attractions include the colonial neighborhoods of San Ángel and Coyoacan, and the nearby archaeological zone of Teotihuacan, which is a UNESCO World Heritage site in addition to the city's historical centre, as well as the lakeside area of Xochimilco. Mexico's capital city boasts a year-round calendar of performing arts, music, dance, film festivals, art exhibitions, and business fairs and expositions.

**3. Puerto Vallarta, Riviera Nayarit:** Puerto Vallarta is one of the major resort destinations of Mexico, especially with American and Canadian travelers. While many only associate Puerto Vallarta with sun and beach, the city is also home to one of the most dynamic art scenes in Mexico with the Galería Dante and Galería Pacifico featuring traditional and contemporary art and sculptures. The city is also popular for its diverse selection of places to eat, ranging from beachside taco stands to upscale restaurants with panoramic views of the bay. *Puerto Vallarta, Riviera Nayarit*

Riviera Nayarit, an area that has been a high priority for commercial developers and hoteliers in the past few decades, is located about fifteen minutes from PV's airport. The area includes the ultra-exclusive Punta Mita with some of the most high-end hotels in Mexico, as well as the resort town of Rincon de Guayabitos.

**4. Baja California Sur: Los Cabos and La Paz:** Known for its natural features and blazing temperature, Baja California Sur is Mexico's melding of desert and ocean. Located at the tip of the Baja Peninsula, Los Cabos is easily accessible by plane, which is why it's a favorite destination for many American travelers, especially those from the west coast of the USA. Its location, with the Sea of Cortes on one side and the Pacific Ocean on the other, gives one a sense of being on an "island-like" sanctuary. The area has several high-end resorts and spas, beautiful beaches, and near-impeccable year-round weather. La Paz, the capital of Baja California Sur, is more of a commercial and cultural center than a vacation destination, although it does attract eco-tourists looking to enjoy La Paz's marine wonders and aquatic activities. It is home to the Museo de Antropología e Historia and La Ruta de las Misiones. *Baja California Sur: Los Cabos and La Paz*

**5. Guadalajara and Tequila in Jalisco:** Mexico's State of Jalisco, home to mariachi music and tequila, provides a strong taste of Mexican culture. Guadalajara is considered to be the cultural center of Western Mexico and the city's famous historic downtown is home to Plaza de Armas, The Metropolitan Cathedral and The Rotonda de los Hombres Ilustres, among several other museums and historical sites including Hospicio Cabanias, a UNESCO World Heritage site.

Travelers also enjoy the city's music culture, ranging from sidewalk Mariachi bands to the Philharmonic Orchestra of Jalisco. Also in Jalisco is the town of Tequila and its surrounding agave fields, listed as a World Heritage Site. Some tourists take the popular Tequila Express and tour tequila country, seeing a number of haciendas and stopping for a tasting along the way.

**6. Ixtapa-Zihuatanejo:** A resort town approximately 150 miles north of Acapulco, the bayside city of Zihuatanejo and the nearby modern resort of Ixtapa make up the third most visited tourist destination in Mexico after Cancun and Puerto Vallarta, especially for sports fishermen. Once a sleepy fishing village, Zihuatanejo gained international popularity in the 1970s after the Mexican Government built the nearby resort of Ixtapa with the aim of establishing a Cancun-like resort on the country's Pacific coast.  
*Ixtapa-Zihuatanejo*

Easily accessible to travelers by way of Ixtapa-Zihuatanejo International airport, Zihuatanejo continues to be popular with tourists because of its homegrown feel and overall charm. It's only about five minutes away from the beach resorts of Ixtapa, home to two world-class golf courses.

**7. Central Mexico: Querétaro, San Miguel de Allende and Guanajuato City:** While many tourists think to go coastal for a Mexican vacation, central Mexico offers a great cultural experience. Guanajuato City, the capital of the state located in the mountains, attracts many tourists with its museum hopping and mine tours, both inside and outside the city (in fact, mining is what made the city prosperous).

Querétaro boasts a bustling arts and music scene, and its old section is a wonderful place to explore on foot. San Miguel de Allende is recognized as a popular cultural center in central Mexico, and is home to many ex-pats from the USA and Canada. Tourists can tour numerous art schools and historic buildings in the city, which is only 170 miles northwest of Mexico, including the Casa de Allende Museum and the home of Ignacio Allende. All three of the cities are UNESCO World Heritage Sites.

**8. Yucatan: Mérida, Uxmal and Chichen Itza:** Most famously known for its historical and archeological sites, the state of Yucatan draws tourists who want to explore the Mayan culture of Mexico. Mérida, the capital of Yucatan and nicknamed "The White City," is the point of departure for all Mayan routes to the nearby sites of Chichen Itza (a UNESCO World Heritage Site that is home of the famous Kukulcan Mayan Pyramid), Ek Balam, and Mayapan.

While the ruins at Uxmal, also a World Heritage Site, may be less impressive than those at Chichen Itza, they reveal a different, more detailed architectural style many travelers find to be worth the trip. Many travelers also come to the region to experience Yucatecan food, known for its own distinct style and Mayan influences.

**9. Copper Canyon:** Named for its copper green coloring, the Copper Canyon is located in the state of Chihuahua and lures many travelers who want to experience the Chihuahua al Pacifico train (commonly known to tourists as the Copper Canyon Railway), which runs through 390 miles of the canyons. The journey takes 14 hours and the experience is enhanced with breathtaking views and scenery.

*Copper Canyon*

Another tourist attraction is the 807-foot tall Basaseachic Falls, the second-highest waterfall in Mexico. Nature lovers and eco-tourists enjoy hiking, camping and bird watching in the area, which is still home to the Raramuris and Tarahumaras, indigenous peoples who live in the mountains.

**10. Chiapas: San Cristobal de las Casas:** San Cristobal de las Casas, a city of over 200,000 inhabitants, is the cultural capital of Chiapas. The city has preserved its century-old houses, cobbled streets and colonial buildings, the most central being the main plaza or the Zocalo, around which tourists find local peoples selling handmade crafts and textiles in open-air markets. Surrounded by dozens of Tzotzil and Tzeltal villages San Cristobal is one the most deeply rooted indigenous areas in the country and a central starting point for exploration of Chiapas, the southern-most state in Mexico.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS:**

---

- Write a short note on variety of tourism products in Mexico.
- What are the tourist attractions of Mexico City and Iztapalapa?
- Make a list of top 10 biggest cities of Mexico.
- Indicate the 10 biggest cities in the maps of Mexico.
- Indicate the top 10 places to visit in the map of Mexico.
- Give a brief introduction of Mexico.

---

**3.8 LETS UP SUM UP:**

---

This unit gives ideas about the brief history of Mexico. After going through this unit, we have understood that which are the important cities, their geographical location, culture, environment, history, economy and government etc. We came to know the major attractions / tourist destination and their different dimensions in the country. This unit gives complete information that makes Mexico a most preferred destination all over the world.

This unit ends with the description of top places to visit in Mexico, which help to choose a destination as per the interest of the tourists.

---

**3.9 CLUES TO ANSWERS:**

---

- Refer Sec.3.4
- Refer Sec.3.7
- Refer Sec.3.5
- Refer Sec.3.5
- Refer Sec.3.7
- Refer Sec.3.2

---

**3.10 REFERENCES:**

---

- Official name of the country. Presidency of Mexico. March 31, 2005. Retrieved May 30, 2010.
- "Mexico's World Heritage Sites Photographic Exhibition at UN Headquarters". Whc.unesco.org Retrieved May 30, 2010.
- "Mexico Topography". Nationsencyclopedia.com. October 16, 2007. Retrieved May 30, 2010.
- "Mexico, Country profile". The Church of Jesus Christ of the Latter-Days Saints Newsroom. Archived from the original on August 25, 2010. Retrieved March 4, 2011.
- Krauze, Enrique (1998). *Mexico: Biography of Power: A history of Modern Mexico 1810–1996*. New York, New York: Harper Perennial. p. 896. ISBN 0-06-092917-0.
- Meyer, Michael C.; William H. Beezley, editors (2000). *The Oxford History of Mexico*. Oxford University Press. p. 736. ISBN 0-19-511228-8.
- Parkes, Henry Bamford (1972). *A History of Mexico* (3rd ed.). Boston: Houghton Mifflin. ISBN 0-395-08410-5.

**Unit-4**

**Brazil and Argentina- History, Variety of Tourism Products,  
Ten Biggest Cities, Important Resources and Top Tourist Places  
in Brazil and Argentina**

---

**Structure:**

**4.1 Objectives**

**4.2 Introduction**

**4.3 History of Brazil and Argentina**

**4.4 Variety of Tourism Products in Brazil and Argentina**

**4.5 Ten Biggest Cities of Brazil and Argentina**

**4.6 Tourism Resources in Brazil and Argentina**

**4.7 Top Ten Places in Brazil and Argentina**

**4.8 Lets Up Sum Up**

**4.9 Clues To Answers**

---

**4.1 OBJECTIVES:**

---

The aim of this unit is to provide information of Brazil and Argentina, Tourism point of view. This unit will guide to the student about the Geographical location and all Tourism aspects of Brazil and Argentina, who attract not only the domestic tourists but also the foreign tourists in terms of tourism receipts and tourist arrivals. After going through Unit 4 on Brazil and Argentina, You will understand the following:

- Geographical location of the country
- Historical richness of the Country
- Importance of Culture in development of Tourism
- Characteristics of Tourism industry in Brazil and Argentina
- Natural attractions in the Country
- Important tourist cities in the Country
- Top tourist attractions of the Country

---

**4.2 INTRODUCTION:**

---

Unit 4 makes an effort to gives the idea to the students about the Brazil and Argentina as a tourist destination and help them to understand the various dimensions of the Tourism attractions of the country.

This unit attempts to through the light on the important cities, Geographical aspects, Attractions (Natural and Man-made), culture and its all aspects, environment, history, economy, government etc. in Brazil and Argentina.

### **Some interesting facts about Brazil and Argentina**

<b>Brazil</b>	<b>Argentina</b>
<b>Name:</b> Federative Republic of Brazil	<b>Name:</b> Republic of Argentina
<b>Motto:</b> "Ordem e Progresso" (Portuguese)	<b>Motto:</b> "En Union y libertad"
<b>Population:</b> 193,946,886 (2012 estimate)	<b>Population:</b> 42,192,500 (2012 estimate)
<b>Capital:</b> Brasilia	<b>Capital:</b> Buenos Aires
<b>Language:</b> Portuguese	<b>Language:</b> Spanish
<b>Religion:</b> Christianity	<b>Religion:</b> Mostly Christians with 93%
<b>Government:</b> Federal presidential	<b>Government:</b> Federal presidential
<b>Currency:</b> Real (R\$) (BLR)	<b>Currency:</b> Peso (P)

---

**4.3 HISTORY OF BRAZIL AND ARGENTINA:**

---

---

**BRAZIL:**

---

**Brazil:** Brazil is the largest country in both South America and the Latin America region. It is the world's fifth largest country, both by geographical area and by population with over 193 million people.

**Brazil:**

- It is the largest Lusophone country in the world, and the only one in the Americas.
- Bounded by the Atlantic Ocean on the east, Brazil has a coastline of 7,491 km (4,655 mi). It is bordered on the north by Venezuela, Guyana, Suriname and the French overseas region of French Guiana; on the northwest by Colombia; on the west by Bolivia and Peru; on the southwest by Argentina and Paraguay and on the south by Uruguay. Numerous archipelagos form part of Brazilian territory, such as Fernando de Noronha, Rocas Atoll, Saint Peter and Paul Rocks, and Trindade and Martim Vaz. It borders all other South American countries except Ecuador and Chile.
- Most international visitors in 2011 came from Argentina (30.8%), from the United States (11.5%) and from Uruguay (5.0%), while as a region most visitors came from neighboring South American countries, mainly from Mercosul.
- The national capital, Brasilia is clearly represented in the map. Located along a plateau, it is the fourth-largest city in the nation. The city serves as the administrative center of the country and is designated a World Heritage Site by the UNESCO.
- Tourism in Brazil is a growing sector and key to the economy of several regions of the country. The country had 5.1 million visitors in 2010, ranking in terms of the international tourist arrivals as the second main destination in South America, and third in Latin America after Mexico and Argentina. Revenues from international tourists reached US\$5.9 billion in 2010, showing a recovery from the 2008-09 economic crises. Historical records of 5.4 million visitors and US\$6.775 billion in receipts were reached in 2011.
- Brazil offers for both domestic and international tourists, an ample gamut of options, with natural areas being its most popular tourism product, a combination of ecotourism with leisure and recreation, mainly sun and beach, and adventure travel, as well as historic and cultural tourism. Among the most popular destinations are the Amazon rainforest, beaches and dunes in the Northeast region, the Pantanal in the Center-west Region, beaches at Rio de Janeiro and Santa Catarina, cultural and historic tourism in Minas Gerais and business trips to Sao Paulo city.

- The major states of Brazil are: Rio Gra Do Sul, Santa Cararina, Parana, Mato Grosso Do Sul, Rio de Janeiro, Espirito Santo, Minas Gerais, Bahia, Sao Paulo, Sergipe, Alagoas, Paraiba, Perhambuco, Rio Grande Do Norte, Ceara, Piaui, Maranhao, Para, Amazonas, Roraima, Acre, Rondonia, Mato Grosso and Amapa.
- Brazil is the seventh-largest economy in the world. It abounds in natural resources like bauxite, manganese, iron ore, timber, uranium, phosphates, platinum, gold, iron ore, manganese, etc. Agriculture, mining and financial services contribute to the country's GDP. The major trading partners of the country are: USA, Argentina, Mexico, Japan, China, Netherlands, Germany, and Nigeria.
- The country is a Federal presidential constitutional republic. The President is both the head of state and government. At present, Dilma Rousseff is the President of Brazil and Michel Temer is the Vice-President.
- Brazil also boasts of having the ninth largest economy in the world . Apart from this, Brazil also occupies an important position in the world map for its illustrious soccer team and the country's passion for this particular sport. The Brazilian national football team holds the record of winning the football World Cup five times. Above all the untainted wilderness of the verdant rain forests of Amazon, the far-famed Iguacu Falls, popular tourist destinations like Sao Paulo, Bahia, Recife, Olinda, the festivities and Carnival of Rio de Janeiro and a plethora of other attractions make this country an attractive destination.
- Brazil encompasses a territory of 8,514,876.599 sq. km between the Atlantic Ocean and central South America. The Amazon rain forest in the north and low-lying mountains and hilly terrain to the south flanks the country. The Brazilian coastline extends over 7,367 km to the east. Physically the Brazil mainland is sub-divided into Northeast, North, South and Southeast. Brazil is predominated by Tropical climate and it is the treasure trove of natural resources and varied biodiversity.
- The Federative Republic of Brazil consists of twenty-six states and one federal district and 5,564 Municipalities.
- Owing to its multi-ethnicity, Brazil has diverse cultural influences. However, the major influence is that of the Portuguese. The principal religion in Brazil is Catholicism and the country has the biggest Roman Catholic population in the globe.
- Brazil was a colony of Portugal beginning from the landing of Pedro Alvares Cabral in 1500, up until 1815, when it was elevated to the rank of kingdom upon the formation of these. United Kingdom of Portugal, Brazil and the Algarves.
- The Brazilian economy is the world's seventh largest by nominal GDP and the Seventh largest by purchasing power parity, as of 2012. A member of the BRIC group, Brazil has

one of the world's fastest growing major economies, and its economic reforms have given the country new international recognition and influence.

- Brazil is one of 17 Mega diverse countries, home to a variety of Wildlife, natural environments, and extensive natural resources in a variety of protected habitats. Brazil is considered a middle power in international affairs, and has been identified as a potential superpower.
- Brazil occupies a large area along the eastern coast of South America and includes much of the continent's interior, sharing land borders with Uruguay to the south; Argentina and Paraguay to the southwest; Bolivia and Peru the west; Colombia to the northwest; and Venezuela, Suriname Guyana and the French overseas department of French Guiana to the north. It shares a border with every country in South America except for Ecuador and Chile. It also encompasses a number of oceanic archipelagos, such as Fernando de Noronha, Rocas Atoll, Saint Peter and Paul Rocks, and Trindade and Martim Vaz.
- Brazil has a dense and complex system of rivers, one of the world's most extensive, with eight major drainage basins, all of which drain into the Atlantic. Major rivers include the Amazon (the world's second-longest river and the largest in terms of volume of water), the Parana and its major tributary the Iguacu (which includes the Iguazu Falls), the Negro, Sao Francisco, Xingu, Madeira and Tapajos rivers.
- Brazil is the largest national economy in Latin America, the world's seventh largest economy at market exchange rates and the seventh largest in purchasing power parity (PPP), according to the international Monetary fund and the World Bank.
- Spending by foreign tourists visiting Brazil reached 6.8 billion dollars in 2011, 14.5% more than in 2010. In 2005, tourism contributed 3.2% of national income arising from the export of goods and services, responsible for the creation of 7% of direct and indirect jobs in the economy. In 2006, an estimated 1.87 million people were employed in the sector, with 768 thousand formal jobs (41%) and 1.1 million informal occupations (59%).
- The Domestic tourism represents a vital part of the industry; accounting for over 50 million trips annually, the direct revenues generated by domestic tourism in 2010 was \$33 billion - nearly six times more than is captured by the country in relation to foreign tourism.
- The core culture of Brazil is derived from Portuguese culture, because of its strong colonial ties with the Portuguese empire. Among other influences, the Portuguese introduced the Portuguese language, Roman Catholicism and Colonial architectural style. The culture was, however, also strongly influenced by African, Indigenous and non-Portuguese European cultures and traditions.

- Brazilian Cinema dates back to the birth of the medium in the late 19th century and has gained a new level of international acclaim in recent years.

---

**Argentina:**

---

**Argentina** is the second largest country in both South America and the Latin America region. The country is a federation of 23 provinces and the autonomous city of Buenos Aires, its capital and largest city.

*Argentina*

- It is the eighth -largest country in the world by land area and the largest among Spanish -speaking nations by geographical area of 2,780,400 km<sup>2</sup> and is the fourth by population, with over 41 million people. Argentina is a founding member of the United Nations, Mercosur, the Union of South American Nations, the Organization of Ibero-American States, the World Bank Group and the World Trade Organization, and is one of the G-15 and G-20 major economies.
- Is located in South America, bordered by Chile to the west and south, Bolivia and Paraguay to the north and Brazil and Uruguay to the northeast. Argentina claims sovereignty over part of Antarctica, the Falkland Islands (Spanish: *Islas Malvinas*) and South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands.
- Argentina was called Viceroyalty of the Rio de la Plata during the period of the History of Argentina when it was an overseas colony of the Spanish Empire. It follows the pre-Columbian age of the indigenous peoples of Argentina, with the arrival of the first Spanish conquerors in the 16th century. The Viceroyalty was established in 1776 out of several former Viceroyalty of Peru dependencies that mainly extended over the Rio de la Plata Basin. Buenos Aires, located on the western shore of the Rio de la Plata estuary, opposite the Portuguese outpost of Colonia del Sacramento, was chosen as the capital. Usually considered one of the late Bourbon Reforms, its creation was both motivated on commercial grounds (Buenos Aires was by then a major spot for illegal trade), as well as on security concerns brought about by the growing interest some foreign powers had over the area, namely Great Britain and the Kingdom of Portugal. The Viceroyalty ends in the 19th century with the begin of the Argentina War of Independence.
- Argentina is the Latin American country with the most Nobel Prizes, for a total of five; all obtained during the second half of the twentieth century. The country has three Nobel prizes in science and two of peace. The most important aspects of Science and technology in Argentina are concerned with medicine, nuclear physics, biotechnology, nanotechnology, space and rocket technology and several fields related to the country's Main Economic Activities. The country also has the mega exhibition center of Science, technology, industry and art Latin America's largest.

- Argentina is composed of twenty-three provinces and one autonomous city, Buenos Aires. The administrative divisions of the Provinces are the departments, and the municipalities, except for Buenos Aires Province, which is divided into Partidos. The City of Buenos Aires is divided into Communes. The provinces are organized as a federation, each one with a local constitution.
- As of 2011, Argentina is the most visited country in South America and the fourth most visited in the Americas.
- Tourism in Argentina is characterized by its cultural offerings and its ample and varied natural assets. The country had 5.28 million visitors in 2010, ranking in terms of the international tourist arrivals as the top destination in South America, and second in Latin America after Mexico. Revenues from international tourists reached US\$4.93 billion in 2010, up from US\$3.96 billion in 2009. The country's capital city, Buenos Aires, is the most visited city in South America.
- The Tourism in Argentina is divided in six regions: Buenos Aires (consisting of Buenos Aires City and Buenos Aires Province), Cordoba, Cuyo, The North, Litoral and Patagonia.
- Argentina is situated in Southern America, with the Andes on the west and the South Atlantic Ocean to the east and south. Argentina has a total surface area (excluding the Antarctic claim and areas controlled by the United Kingdom) of 2,780,400 km<sup>2</sup> (1,073,500 sq mi); of this, 43,710 km<sup>2</sup> (16,880 sq mi), or 1.57%, is water.
- The highest point above sea level is in the Mendoza province at Cerro Aconcagua (6,959 m (22,831 ft)), also the highest point in the Southern and Western Hemisphere. The lowest point is Laguna Del Carbon in Santa Cruz province, -105 m (-344 ft) below sea level. This is also the lowest point in South America. The easternmost continental point is northeast of Bernardo de Irigoyen, Misiones, and the westernmost in the Perito Moreno National Park in Santa Cruz province. The northernmost point is at the confluence of the Grande de San Juan and Mojinete rivers in Jujuy province, and the southernmost is Cape San Pio in Tierra del Fuego.
- The major rivers are the Para, Rio Negro (the largest), the Pilcomayo, Paraguay, Bermejo, Colorado, Rio Negro, Salado and the Uruguay. The Paraná and the Uruguay join to form the Rio de la Plata estuary, before reaching the Atlantic. Regionally important rivers are the Atuel and Mendoza in the homonymous province, the Chubut in Patagonia, the Río Grande in Jujuy and the San Francisco River in Salta.
- The 4,725 km (2,936 mi) long Atlantic coast varies between areas of sand dunes and cliffs. The continental platform, the Patagonian Shelf, is unusually wide; this shallow area of the Atlantic is called the Argentina Sea. The two major ocean currents affecting the coast are the warm Brazil Current and the cold Falkland Current. Because of the

unevenness of the coastal landmass, the two currents alternate in their influence on climate and do not allow temperatures to fall evenly with higher latitude. The southern coast of Tierra del Fuego forms the north shore of the Beagle Channel.

- The economy of Argentina is Latin America's third-largest, with a Very High Human Development Index and a relatively high GDP per capita. It is classified as an upper middle-income economy by the World Bank.
- The country benefits from rich natural resources, a highly literate population, an export-oriented agricultural sector and a diversified industrial base. Historically, however, Argentina's economic performance has been very uneven, in which high economic growth alternated with severe recessions, particularly during the late twentieth century, and income misdistribution and poverty increased. Early in the twentieth century it was one of the richest countries in the world and the richest in the Southern hemisphere, though it is now an upper-middle income country.

---

**4.4 VARIETY OF TOURISM PRODUCTS IN BRAZIL AND ARGENTINA:**

---

These countries on a continental scale, has much more than only sun and surf to offer the tourist. It is possible to plan a trip that focuses on the cold of the mountainous regions like the Serra Gaucha (Gaucho Mountains), in the state of Rio Grande do Sul. There is also Pantanal, the largest floodplain in the world, offering adventure and sport fishing tourism. Not to mention the 17 World Heritage Sites spread around the country.

Tourism in Brazil and Argentina does not exist solely based on the natural beauty of the landscape. Regional events such as carnival, festas juninas (typical festivities that take place in the month of June), folia de reis (religious festival), are some of the many celebrations that make Brazil an international tourist destination.

Ice trekking and rafting, Wine tourism, Biking, Cultural and natural tourism, Cruise tourism, Wildlife tourism, Medical tourism is very popular types of tourism in Argentina. Apart from these types of tourism which are given in Argentina, Brazil has nautical tourism, Adventure tourism, Ecotourism as a very popular type of tourism.

---

**4.5 TEN BIGGEST CITIES OF BRAZIL AND ARGENTINA:**

---

**4.5.1 BRAZIL'S TEN BIGGEST CITIES:**

**1. Rio de Janeiro, Brazil:** In between the picturesque mountains and lushes rainforests view the infamous beautiful Brazilian bikini bodies on its coastal white-sand beaches or stand at the feet of Christ whilst embracing the stunning costal views.

**2. Iguazu Falls, Brazil:** One of the natural wonders of the world, higher than the Niagra Falls, the great waterfalls of Iguazu are accessible from the town of Foz do Iguacu. Take a cruise out to the bottom of the falls.

**3. Pantanal, Brazil:** Pantanal is the worlds largest adjoining wet lands go trekking, horseback riding or take an unforgettable boat ride through the wildlife filled wetlands home to 10 million yacare caiman (crocodiles), red-bellied piranhas, birds and jaguars.

**4. Santa Catarina Island, Brazil:** Explore the vibrant island surrounded by lagoons, waterfalls, lakes, mountains, deserted beaches, fishing villages and vibrant coastline. Its thriving nightlife, tasty oysters and big surf are superb.

**5. Amazon, Brazil:** Canoe your way through the dense forest, experience local cuisine, arts and craft, wildlife, hear the cry of the howler monkeys and sweep past the Indian tribes as you venture into the world's largest rainforest.

**6. Fernando de Noronha, Brazil:** Brazil's Fernando de Noronha is fabled as an eco-wonderland and a beach-lovers' Shangri-la, where even the sharks are friendly. Mike Hodgkin's son finds out if it lives up to the hype Getaway to the most spectacular group of islands; see Brazil's most beautiful beaches. Dive and snorkel its warm waters with underwater visibility of up to 50meters or swim with, manta ray, sea tortoises and dolphins.

**7. Sao Luis, Brazil:** Beautiful Portuguese colonial town set on the coast, known for being the capital of reggae music, wonder through the cobbled streets exploring the old colonial mansions, museums, local cuisine and beaches.

**8. Salvador, Brazil:** The lively city of Salvador boasts many attractions from beaches to colonial buildings, churches, frenzied nightlife, wild festivals, nightly performances, its music, arts, food and dance could be considered a religion in Salvador.

**9. Sao Paulo, Brazil:** The lively city of Sao Paulo boasts many attractions from beaches, churches, frenzied nightlife, wild festivals, nightly performances, its music, arts, food and dance could be considered a religion in Sao Paulo.

**10. Brasilia, Brazil:** The modern futuristic capital city of Brazil, view its defying architectural masterpieces, visit museums, art galleries, theatres or try hang gliding or heal yourself in the mineral springs at the Parque Nacional de Brasilia.

---

#### **4.5.2 ARGENTINA'S TEN BIGGEST CITIES**

---

**1. Buenos Aires:** Buenos Aires is the capital and largest city of Argentina, and the second largest metropolitan city in South America after Greater Sao Paulo. It is located on the western shore of the estuary of the Rio de la Plata, on the southeastern coast of the South

American continent. The Greater Buenos Aires conurbation, which also includes several Buenos Aires province district, constitutes the third-largest conurbation in Latin America, with a population of around thirteen million.

**2. Cordoba:** Cordoba is a city located in the geographical center of Argentina in the foothills of the Sierras Chicas on the Suquia River; about 700 km (435 mi) northwest of Buenos Aires. It is the capital of Cordoba province and the second largest city in Argentina, after the autonomous city of Buenos Aires. It was one of the first Spanish colonial capitals of the region that is now Argentina.

**3. Rosario:** Rosario is the largest city in the province of Santa Fe, in central Argentina. It is located 300 km (185 mi) northwest of Buenos Aires, on the western shore of the Parana River. Rosario is the third most populous city in the country, and also the most populous non-capital city in Argentina with a growing and important metropolitan area; Greater Rosario has an estimated population of 1,276,000 as of 2012. One of its main attractions includes the neoclassical architecture that has been retained over the centuries in hundreds of residences, houses and public buildings.

Rosario is the head city of the Rosarion department and is located at the heart of the major industrial corridor in Argentina. The city is a major railroad terminal and the shipping center for northeastern Argentina. Ships reach the city via the Paraná River, which allows the existence of 34 feet (10 m) deep port. The Rosario-Victoria Bridge opened in 2004, spans the Paraná River, connecting Rosario with the city of Victoria, across the Parana Delta. Because it plays a critical role in agricultural commerce, the city finds itself at the center of a continuing debate over taxes levied on big-ticket agricultural goods such as soy.

Along with Parana, Rosario is one of the few Argentine cities that cannot point to a particular individual as its founder. Rosario is the birthplace of many famous people like revolutionary Che Guevara, football player Lion Messi and model Valeria Mazza among others.

**4. Mendoza:** Mendoza offers people on medical tourism jaunts a chance to explore the varied cuisine and fine wines of this region. With the majestic Andes Mountain providing a breathtaking backdrop, Mendoza is dotted with trekking and hiking trails. The wine valleys of Argentina are located to the west of Mendoza, and wine aficionados can enjoy memorable vacations sampling the different varieties of wine in the region.

**5. Tucuman:** Tucuman is the most densely populated and the smallest by land area, of the provinces of Argentina. Located in the northwest of the country, the capital is San Miguel de Tucuman, often shortened to Tucumán. Neighboring provinces are, clockwise from the north: Salta, Santiago del Estero and Catamarca.

Despite Tucumán's small size, it has two main different geographical systems. The east is associated with the Gran Chaco flat lands, while the west presents a mixture of the Sierras of the pampas to the south and the canyons of the Argentina Northwest to the north. The Cerro Del Bolson is the highest peak at an elevation of 5,550 metres (18,209 ft). The most visited destinations of the province are the Caalles Calchaquies, Tafi Del Valle, Ruins of Quilmes and Diaguita community of Amaicha Del Valle, and the city of San Miguel de Tucuman.

**6. La Plata:** La Plata is the capital city of the province of Buenos Aires, Argentina and of La Plata Partido. La Plata was planned and developed to serve as the provincial capital after the city of Buenos Aires was federalized in 1880, and it was officially founded by Governor Dardor Rocha on 19 November 1882. Its construction is fully documented in photographs by Tomas Bradley Sutton. The city is home to two important footballs (soccer). Estudiantes de La Plata, that plays in the first division and Gymnasia y Esgrima La Plata, currently in second division.

The city of La Plata has many monuments and historical sites. Among them are: the Banco Provincia de Buenos Aires headquarters, the Curutchet house, Casa de Gobierno Provincial, Casa Mariani - Teruggi, Centro Cultural Islas Malvinas, Centro Cultural Meridiano V, Centro Cultural Pasaje Dardo Rocha, Iglesia San Benjamin, La Legislatura Provincial, Museo de Ciencias Naturales, the Quinta Oreste Santos Pago, the Rectorado de la UNLP, Museo Ferroviario of Tolosa, the Teatro Municipal Coliseo Podestá, the Anfiteatro Martín Fierro, the de La Plata, Estadio Ciudad, entre Otros.

**7. Mar del Plata:** Mar del Plata is an Argentina's city located on the coast of the Atlantic Ocean, 400 km (249 mi) south of Buenos Aires. Mar del Plata is the second largest city of Buenos Aires province. The name "Mar del Plata" has the meaning of "sea of the Plate region" or "adjoining sea to the (River) Plate region".

Mar del Plata is one of the major fishing ports and the biggest seaside beach resort in Argentina. With a population of 614,350 as per the 2010 Census, it is the 7<sup>th</sup> largest city in Argentina. As part of the Argentine recreational coast, tourism is Mar del Plata's main economic activity with huge number of tourists visiting the city. Mar del Plata has a sophisticated tourist infrastructure with numerous hotels, restaurants, casinos, theatres and other tourist attractions.

Mar del Plata is also an important sports centre with a multi-purpose Olympic style stadium (first used for the 1978 World Cup and later upgraded for the 1995 Pan American Games), five golf courses and many other facilities.

**8. Salta:** Salta is a city located in the Lerma Valley, at 1,152 metres (3780 feet) above sea level in the North West part of Argentina and it is also the name for the capital city of the Salta province.

Along with its metropolitan area, it has a population of 619,000 inhabitants, which makes it the second most populated city in the northwest of the country.

Within Argentina, Salta is the city which has preserved its colonial architecture the best. It is situated in the Lerma Valley, 1,152 metres (3780 feet) above sea level, at the foothills of the Andes Mountains.

**9. Santa fe:** Santa Fe is the capital city of province of Santa Fe, Argentina. It is situated in northeastern Argentina, near the junction of the Parana and Salado rivers. It lies 15 kilometers from the Hernandarias Sub fluvial Tunnel that connects it to the city of Parana. The city is also connected by canal with the port of Coastline on the Paraná River.

Santa Fe is linked to Rosario (170 km (106 mi) to the south), the largest city in the province, by the Brigadier Estanislao Lopez Highway and by National route 11, which continues south towards Buenos Aires, and it is home to Sauce Viejo airport with daily direct flights to Rosario and Aeroparque Jorge Newbery in Buenos Aires. Santa Fe has a lot of important commercial centres, busy cultural life, interesting options in sports and tourism, numerous artistic and musical events, and an exciting nightlife.

There is important infrastructure for tourism that has been developed: river side bars and nightclubs, chic restaurants, the improvement of the major highways and a sub fluvial tunnel and, combine that with the beauty of the landscape and the various attractions that tourists enjoy make this a popular region to spend holidays. Hunting, fishing, excursions, walks by the river, practicing water sports on the River Paraná. In a nutshell, Santa Fe offers a complete and varied shade of attractions that make one dive into history when visiting monuments, museums or find oneself in the beautiful parks, rivers and streams surrounded by wild flora and fauna.

**10. San Juan:** San Juan is the capital city of the Argentina province of San Juan in the Cuyo region, located in the Tulum valley, west of the San Juan River, at 650 m (2,133 ft) above sea level.). It is a modern city with wide streets and well drawn avenues with wide sidewalks and vegetation of different species of trees irrigated by canals, from which it derives its nickname oasis town.

It has an important accommodation infrastructure and transportation. It highlights modern buildings and the surroundings, the reservoir and Ullum dam, spas, museums, large plantations of vines, and various types of agriculture, with wine being the most important.

---

**4.6 TOURISM RESOURCES IN BRAZIL AND ARGENTINA**

---

**4.6.1 BRAZIL'S TOURISM RESOURCES**

Brazil's large territory comprises different ecosystems, such as the Amazon Rainforest recognized as having the greatest biological diversity in the world, with the Atlantic Forest and the Cerrado, sustaining the greatest biodiversity. In the south, the Araucaria pine forest grows under temperate conditions. The rich wildlife of Brazil reflects the variety of natural habitats. Scientists estimate that the total number of plant and animal species in Brazil could approach four million.

The natural heritage of Brazil is severely threatened by cattle ranching and agriculture, logging, mining, resettlement, oil and gas extraction, over-fishing, wildlife trade, dams and infrastructure, water pollution, climate change, fire, and invasive species.

Brazil is geographically divided into five regions (also called macro regions) by the Brazil Institute of Geography and Statistics composed by the States within them. Although officially recognized, the division is merely academic, considering geographic, social and economic factors, among others, and has no political effects other than orientating Federal-level government programs.

**1. Southeast Region:** The Southeast Region of Brazil is composed by the states of Espirito Santa, Minas Gerais, Rio de Janeiro and Sao Paulo. It is the richest region of the country, responsible for approximately 60% of the Brazilian GDP. Sao Paulo, Rio de Janeiro and Minas are three richest states of Brazil, the top three Brazilian states in terms of GDP. The Southeast of Brazil also has the highest GDP per Capita among all Brazilian regions. The Southeast region leads the country in population, urban population, population density, vehicles, industries, universities, airports, ports, highways, hospitals, schools, houses and many other areas. The Pampulha Church in Belo Horizonte is one of the most expressive symbols of the Brazilian Modern Architecture.

Minas Gerais, National park of Serra da Canastra, Station Square in Belo Horizonte, Espirito Santo, Espirito Santos's beaches in Guarapari etc are the main resources of Southeast region of Brazil.

**2. South Region, Brazil:** The South Region of Brazil is one of the five regions of Brazil. It includes the states of Parana, Santa Catarina and Rio de Sul and covers 576,409.6 km<sup>2</sup> being the smallest portion of the country, occupying only about 5% of the territory of Brazil. Its whole area is smaller than that of the state of Minas Gerais, in the Southeast Brazil.

It is a great tourist, economic and cultural pole. It borders Uruguay, Argentina, and Paraguay as well as the Center-West Region, the Southeast Region and the Atlantic Ocean.

**3. Central-West Region, Brazil:** The Central-West Region of Brazil is composed of the states of Goiás, Mato Grosso and Mato Grosso do Sul ; along with Federal District, where Brazil's national capital, Brasília , is situated. This Region is right in the heart of Brazil, representing 18.86% of the national territory. With the move of the country's federal capital from Rio de Janeiro to Brasília in the 60s, the construction of roads and railways to the interior of the country made the accesses easier, speeding up the population settling and contributing significantly to its development. Today, Center-West is attracting many investments for agriculture, Pecuary, industries and people from Southeast and Southern Brazil.

The economy in the Central-West Region is essentially based on cattle breeding, which took the place of gold and precious stone prospecting, which were local activities in the past. Brazil's largest manganese reserve is found in the Central-West Region in Urucum Woods and 'political business' and tourism are also very important to the region. Tourism has grown at impressive speed in the last decades there, attracting visitors from several parts of Brazil and the world; who all enjoy the Region's flora and fauna riches, as well as its innumerable marvelous views.

Located in the middle of vast Central Upland, the Central-West Region reveals how attractive the tours in the interior of the country can be. Starting in the west part of Mato Grosso do Sul State and the southeast part of Mato Grosso State, have Pantanal Mato-Grossense; the largest swampy plain area in the world, cut by Paraguai River. Its fauna and flora riches draw the attention of the world. In the same state, it's possible to take tours through pleasant places, such as Alta Floresta, where ecotourism is the greatest attraction; Bonito, one of the places with the most crystalline waters in the country; and Chapada dos Guimarães National Park, full of mountains and beautiful landscapes offered by the meadow vegetation.

Dividing the States of Mato Grosso, Mato Grosso do Sul and Goiás, Araguaia River attracts innumerable fishermen from all parts of Brazil and the world. And in the State of Goiás historical attractions, such as Pirenópolis draw many visitors all year long, with its steep stone-paved streets and its colonial houses. Other attractions in the same state include Chapada dos Veadeiros and the National Park of Emas, where the contact with the nature is the essence of the tours. In the Federal District, the National Park of Brasília is one of the greatest local attractions.

**4. Northeast Region:** The Northeast Region of Brazil is composed of the following states: Maranhão, Rio Grande do Norte, Alagoas, Sergipe, Paraíba and Bahia, and it represents 18.26% of the Brazilian territory. The Northeast was the first area of discovery in Brazil, when roughly 1,500 Portuguese arrived on April 22, 1500, under the command of Pedro Álvares Cabral at Porto Seguro in the state of Bahia.

The Northeast Region has a population of 53.6 million people, which represents 28% of the total number in the whole country. Most of the population lives in urban areas and about 15 million people live in the Sertao. It is famous in Brazil for its hot weather, beautiful beaches, rich culture (unique folklore, music, cuisine, and literature), Carnival and St. John's festivities, the Sertao and being the Birth place of the country.

The biggest cities are Salvador, Fortaleza and Recife, which are the regional metropolitan areas of the Northeast, all with a population above a million inhabitants and metropolitan areas above 3.5 million. The Northeast is home to several universities, museums, theaters, churches, and historical landmarks of colonial Brazil.

Geographically, the Northeast consists chiefly of an eroded continental Craton with many low hills and small ranges. The highest peaks are around 1,850 metres (6,070 ft) in Bahia, while further north there are no peaks above 1,123 metres (3,684 ft). On its northern and western side, the plateaus fall steadily to the coast and into the basin of the Tocantins River in Maranhao, but on the eastern side it falls off quite sharply to the coast except in the valley of the Sao Francisco River. The steep slopes and long cliffs of the eastern coastline are known as "The Great Escarpment"

**5. North Region, Brazil:** The North Region of Brazil is the largest Region of Brazil, corresponding to 45.27% of the national territory. It is the least inhabited of the country, and contributes with a minor percentage in the national GDP and population. It is composed by the states of Acre, Amapa, Amazonas, Para, Rondonia, Roraima and Tocantins.

Its demographic density is the lowest in Brazil considering all the regions of the country, with only 3.8 inhabitants per km<sup>2</sup>. Most of the population is centered in urban areas. The North is home to the Federal University of Amazonas and Federal University of Para

Heart of the largest continued remnant of the Brazilian Atlantic Forest, the Ribeira Valley is a Natural Heritage of Humanity, granted heritage as a Biosphere Reserve by UNESCO. One of the biggest attractions is the biologic and ecosystems diversity, where approximately 400 species of Birds, amphibians, reptiles and mammals live.

The Alto Ribeira State and Tourist Park (PETAR) is paradise for ecotourist, for its enormous diversity in geologic formations, among Grottos and Caves, Rivers and waterfalls. There are currently 454 caves registered by the Brazilian Society of Speleology (SBE) in the State of São Paulo, all at the Ribeira Valley. The 280 caves located at PETAR represent the biggest concentration of caves in Brazil.

**6. Rio de Janeiro:** The state is part of the Mata Atlantic biome, and its topography comprises both mountains and plains, located between the Mantiqueira Mountains and the Atlantic Ocean. Its coast is carved by the bays of Guanabara, Sepetiba and Ilha Grande. There are prominent slopes near the ocean, featuring also diverse environments, such as

restinga vegetation, bays, lagoons and tropical forests. Rio de Janeiro is the smallest state in the Southeast macro region and one of the smallest in Brazil. It has, however, the third longest coastline in the country (second only to Bahia's and Maranhao's), extending 635 kilometers.

The Rio Grande do Sul has a great potential for paleontological tourism, with many paleontological sites and museums in Paleorrota. There is a large area in the center of the state that belongs to the Triassic. Here lived Rhynchosaur, Thecodonts, Exaeretodonts, Staurikosaurus, Guaibasaurus, Saturnalia tupiniquim, Sacisaurus, Unaysaurus and many others

---

#### **4.6.2 ARGENTINA'S TOURISM RESOURCES**

---

Tourist regions of Argentina: The North (orange), Litoral (light green), Cuyo (beige), Cordoba (dark green), Buenos Aires (consisting of Buenos Aires City and Buenos Aires Province; light blue) and Patagonia (dark blue).

- **Buenos Aires:** Buenos Aires is in the midst of a tourism boom, according to the World Travel & Tourism. The most popular tourist sites are found in the historic city core, comprising Montserrat and San Telmo. The city was originally constructed around the Plaza de Mayo, the administrative center of the Spanish Colony.

The Province of Buenos Aires is the most populous and largest province of Argentina. The nation's rail and road network fans out from Buenos Aires and into the province, the area centered on the Pampas. This region is characterized by its Estancias (large cattle ranches) the oldest of them being featured in architectural styles, located in the middle of the Pampas. The province is also known by its many and different beaches in the coast of the Atlantic Ocean (the most visited being Mar del Plata). The hilly region of Tandil and Ventana offers golf courses, paragliding rides and trekking. They are very different landscapes from each other and distant from the mouth of the Parana River, which islands are also visited by tourists.

- **Cordoba:** The Cordoba Province is one of the most important economic centers in the country. It has with many contrasting features – it is both a cultural and tourist-like destination, a traditional and modern city, with an industrialized as well as a home-made production. Large portions of landscape and favorable weather conditions are distinctive in Cordoba; natural sceneries are mixed with colonial monuments. Little towns, historical antiques and cave paintings are found in a pleasant valley landscape, high plains and gorges. Sierras de Cordoba rise toward the northwestern Pampas plains. They are part of the “Sierras Pamoeanas” mountain range, reaching 2,790 m high in the Champaqui hill. These hills are fertile valleys, deserts and salt mines. All along the way northward, many 17th and 18th century chapels and farmhouses inherited from the Jesuits can be found.

The Jesuit Estancias (large cattle ranches) in Cordoba are a singular sample of the productive organization of the religious members of Compañia de Jesus in the country, and this can still be seen in a preserved architecture.

- **Cuyo:** The Cuyo region consists of the provinces of La Rioja, San Juan, Mendoza and San Luis. Cuyo is the region of the high peaks, the snow-covered volcanoes, and the large wilderness spreading from the Andes mountain range and foothills to the steppe. The visit to Ischigualasto -Talampaya Natural Parks is an historical path through Argentinean history of paleontology. Ischigualasto, also known as "Valle de la Luna" (Moon Valley) because of the diversity of forms and colours of its landscape shaped by erosion, is one of the world's most important paleontological sites.

The Talampaya River Canyon reveals multi-shaped layers in its high red walls. Pink flamingos, Andean ducks, "vicuñas" and "guanacos" cohabit freely in parks and natural reserves, while condors fly over the area. The region displays the full splendor of the Central Andean Range. The Aconcagua (6,959 m) is the highest peak in the Western Hemisphere, and its steep slopes are renowned and respected by mountain climbers worldwide. In the valleys of La Rioja, Mendoza and San Juan, among leaves of grapevines, farms and wineries, visitors can go along the Wine Road.

- **The North:** Northern provinces feature traces of pre-Columbian cultures, mingled with ruins of natives' villages, as well as forts and constructions dating back to the time of the Conquest and Colonization. In the high plateau of the Puna, a land full of mountain ranges, steep mountain paths, and gorges. Villages have been built in the small valleys. Multi-coloured and monochromatic hills covered with huge cactuses on the slopes surround the village. This region offers landscapes full of contrast, from the high peaks to the salt pans, and the subtropical rain forests, where Latin American culture took root.

An ample diversity of natural landscapes and dramatic contrasts such as the densely vegetated Yunga forests, or the mountains, hills and brooks of the Calchaqui Valleys, provide great conditions for sport fishing. The rivers Juramento, Lipeo, Iruya and Bermejo are home to the dorado, and the mountain river rapids support trout. The whole region combines natural attractions with suitable areas for diverse activities such as mountaineering, trekking, horseback riding, mountain biking, ecotourism, bird-watching, rural tourism, and archeological trips. Sailing, canoeing and windsurfing are other sports that may be practiced in this region.

Destinations of interest in this region are the train to the Clouds, which offers a view to the stark contrasts of the province of Salta; the Quebrada de Humahuaca, which was declared a World Heritage Site in 2003, the Calchaqui Valley, that ranges from the mountain desert to the subtropical forest; Pucara de Tilcara, a fort built by the humahuacas; Cafeyate; Iruya; and Tafi del Valle, among others.

- **Litoral:** The Iguazu Falls, part of the Iguazu National Park and an UNESCO World Heritage site shared with Brazil. The "Litoral", Spanish for littoral, consists of the provinces of Chaco, Corrientes, Entre Rios, Formosa, Misiones and Santa Fe. This is a region of large rivers, humid tropics, red earth and a virgin forest full of huge trees and important flora and fauna. The Iguazu Falls on the border with Brazil are one of the world's natural wonders. Lined with dense forests, the Iguazu River flows into 275 waterfalls, plunging more than 70 meters with a deafening noise. As this huge volume of water reaches the bottom, spray rises, and rainbows are formed in the sky.

A variety of fauna and flora completes the setting for the waterfalls within the protection of the Iguazu National Park. This park, located at eighteen kilometres from Puerto Iguazu was declared National Heritage of Humanity by UNESCO. The famous falls are inside this park. The deep flowing waters of the river fall from a height of 70 metres through 275 falls over 2.7 km. The National Park is full of the exotic subtropical vegetation which surrounds the falls and has 2,000 plant species - gigantic trees, ferns, lianas, orchids, - 400 bird species - parrots, hummingbirds, toucans - jaguars and yacares (caimans).

The Esteros Del Ibera, a humid zone of 700.000 hectares can be reached from Posadas, Concepción or Mercedes. In Guarani, *Ibera* means "Shining water". Its lagoons cover 31,500 hectares, its marshlands 52,000, and its inlands 260,000. This eco-system which gives life to turtles, yacares (caimans), monkeys, swamp deer, capybaras - the largest rodent in the world - and up to 400 bird species, besides an extraordinary flora, extends over one million hectares. The city of Rosario lies on the banks of the Parana River in the Province of Santa Fe. It has developed into an industrial and commercial center and destination for a significant number of people on business. On its riverside promenade stands the Monumento Nacional a la Bandera (National Monument to the Flag), where the Argentine National Flag was raised for the first time. Parque Independencia has an artificial lake, statues, a racecourse, and the Provincial History Museum.

- **Patagonia:** The Patagonic region consists of the provinces of La Pampa, Neuquen, Rio Negro, Chubut, Santa Cruz, and Tierra del Fuego.

Argentina and Brazil remain major trading partners in the South American region. In addition, these countries work together in making satellites orbiting over South America performing different jobs. Argentina is currently participating in major peacekeeping operations in Haiti, Cyprus, Western Sahara and the Middle East.

---

## 4.7 TOP 10 PLACES IN BRAZIL AND ARGENTINA

---

### 4.7.1 BRAZIL'S TOP 10 PLACES:

Sprawling across half of South America, Brazil is the fifth largest country in the world. White-sand beaches, tropical islands, music-filled metropolises and charming colonial

towns are dotting its 7,500 km (4,600 mi) long coastline. Inland, Brazil tourist attractions consist of imposing waterfalls, wetlands filled with wildlife, and the untouched wilderness of the Amazon rainforest where several isolated tribes still live without any contact with the rest of the world.

**1. Christ the Redeemer:** Christ the Redeemer is the famous statue of Jesus Christ in Rio de Janeiro. Located at the peak of the 700 meters (2,300 ft) Corcovado Mountain, it provides a sweeping panorama from the interior of Guanabara bay to the north, to Lagoa Rodrigo de Freitas to the south. The Christ the Redeemer statue stands 39.6 meters (130 ft) tall, including its 9.5 meters (31 ft) pedestal and has become an icon of Rio and Brazil.

**2. Iguazu Falls:** One of the great natural wonders of the world, Iguacu Falls is situated on the border between Brazil and Argentina. The waterfall system consists of 275 falls along the Iguazu River. The most impressive of them all is the Devil's Throat a U-shaped with a height of 82 meter (269 ft). The falls can be reached from the cities Foz do Iguacu in Brazil and Puerto Iguazu in Argentina, as well as from Ciudad Del Este in Paraguay. On the Brazilian side there is a long walkway along the canyon with an extension to the lower base of the Devil's Throat.

**3. Amazon River:** At approximately 6,400 km (4,000 miles) the Amazon River is the second longest river in the world, just slightly shorter than the Nile, and the largest river by volume. The Amazon has over 3,000 recognized species of fish and new species are still being discovered. The Amazon Basin is covered by half of the planet's remaining rainforests. Although a tenth of the world's estimated 10 million living species live in the Amazon rainforest, jungle tours are more about the boating upriver into the damp, buzzing, oppressive ambience than actually spotting animals.

**4. Rio Carnival:** There are carnival celebrations in virtually every corner of Brazil, the best-known ones taking place in Recife together with the neighboring Olinda and Salvador. But the biggest and most famous carnival is undoubtedly the Carnival in Rio de Janeiro. The Rio Carnival attracts two million people per day on the streets and almost half a million foreigners during its 4 day celebration. The Carnival is all over the place, in the streets and squares, bars, clubs and all other venues in Rio, concluding in the spectacular Rio Samba Parade at the Sambadrome.

**5. Pantanal:** The Pantanal is the world's largest wetland, lying mostly in Western Brazil but extending into Bolivia and Paraguay as well. Famous for its wildlife, it is one of Brazil's major tourist attractions. Unlike the Amazon rainforest, in the Pantanal you are virtually guaranteed to actually see the wildlife. Capybara and the Yacare Caiman are present in the millions. The Pantanal is also home to one of the largest Jaguar populations in the Americas.

**6. Salvador Beaches:** Salvador is the capital of the state of Bahia, with an attractive colonial town, a vibrant musical scene and loads of exceptional beaches all around. The

beaches range from calm inlets, ideal for swimming, diving and sailing, as well as open sea inlets with strong waves, popular with surfers. There are also beaches surrounded by reefs, forming natural pools of stone, ideal for children.

**7. Historic Center of Olinda:** Another well preserved colonial city, Olinda is located on the Brazil's northeastern coast, just north of Recife. Olinda features a number of major touristic attractions, such as a historic downtown area, churches, and the famous Carnival of Olinda. Many bars, restaurants, artist and craftspeople studios add charm to the old-town setting.

**8. Fernando de Noronha:** Fernando de Noronha is a beautiful archipelago with pristine beaches, landscapes and wildlife, situated 354 km (220 miles) off the northeastern coast in Brazil. The archipelago was discovered by Amerigo Vespucci in 1503 and temporarily occupied by the Dutch and French before Portugal established dominion in 1737. Today only the largest of the 21 islands is inhabited with a population of about 3,500. The islands are a Mecca for divers and snorkelers with warm waters year-round and very good visibility even at depths of 50 meters.

**9. Teatro Amazonas:** Teatro Amazonas or Amazon Theatre is an opera house located in Manaus, in the heart of the Amazon Rainforest. It was built during the heyday of rubber trade using materials from all over the world, with furniture from Paris, marble from Italy, and steel from England. On the outside of the building, the dome was covered with 36,000 decorated ceramic tiles painted in the colors of the Brazilian national flag.

**10. Ouro Preto:** One of Brazil's best-preserved colonial towns, Ouro Preto, meaning "black gold", was founded at the end of the 17th century. It quickly became the epicenter of a new gold rush in the state of Minas Gerais. The city contains well preserved Portuguese colonial architecture, while modern buildings must adhere to historical standards maintained by the city. 18th- and 19th-century churches decorated with gold and the sculptured works of Aleijadinho make Ouro Preto one of the most popular tourist attractions in Brazil.

---

#### **4.7.2 ARGENTINA'S TOP TEN PLACES**

---

**1. Iguazu Falls, Argentina:** One of the natural wonders of the world, higher than the Niagra Falls, the great waterfalls of Iguazu are accessible from the small town of Puerto Iguazu. Take a train to the beginning of the trail or venture in by foot.

**2. Buenos Aires, Argentina:** The cosmopolitan capital city of Argentina, experience its sensual Argentinian tango, wild nightlife, sightseeing, stylish gourmet cuisine, Argentinian wine tasting, and architecture and explore the sophisticated metropolis.

**3. Mendoza, Argentina:** View the breath taking landscape whilst skiing down the Andes, tour the Argentinean vineyards, and experience rafting, buzzing nightlife, wine cafes and water fountains in every corner.

**4. Tierra del Fuego, Argentina:** For the real adventurers the isolated islands of Tierra del Fuego offers picturesque glaciers, enchanting mountains, astonishing coastal sea lines and lush forests. Its natural beauty attracts adventure seekers to the city of Ushuaia, offering affordable cruises to view its nearby attractions.

**5. Cordoba, Argentina:** The cultural capital of South America surrounded by valleys, famous for its art Cordoba boasts fine dining, cathedrals, art galleries, museums, theatres, nightlife, colonial architecture and crafts markets.

**6. Peninsula Valdes, Argentina:** Explore the astonishing wetland reserve whilst viewing the reserves fascinating wildlife of caimans, giant armadillo, whales, seals, sea lions, penguins, capybaras, birds accessible through the small town of Colonia Pellegrini.

**7. Glacier Perito Moreno, Argentina:** Picturesque glacier located in the Los Glaciares National Park trek or cruise close enough to see, experience and hear the ice collapse into its shattering iceberg channel on the river El Calafate.

**8. El Chalten, Argentina:** Adventure town surrounded by mountains of bewildering landscape, partake in the many outdoor activities available including hiking, camping and climbing the peak of Cerro Fitz Roy (3441m).

**9. Bariloche, Argentina:** This all season destination is a favourite for chocolate lovers and adventurers, its towering mountains surrounds the city, experience the ski chalet, trout fishing, biking, skiing, cruising the Lake Nahuel Huapi and horse riding.

**10. Puerto Madryn, Argentina:** Paradise Island, surrounded by beautiful beaches, hotels and great cuisine, offering the best in seafood, yachting, fishing, diving and sailing.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS:**

---

- Write a short note on variety of tourism products in Brazil and Argentina.
- What are the tourist attractions of Rio de Janeiro and Iguazu Falls in Brazil?
- What are the tourist attractions of Buenos Aires and Cordoba in Argentina?
- Make a list of top 10 biggest cities of Brazil.
- Make a list of top 10 biggest cities of Argentina.
- Indicate the 10 biggest cities in the maps of Brazil and Argentina.

- Indicate the top 10 places to visit in the map of Brazil and Argentina.

---

**4.8 LETS UP SUM UP:**

---

This unit gives ideas about the brief history of Brazil and Argentina. After going through this unit, we have understood that which are the important cities, their geographical location, culture, environment, history, economy and government etc. We came to know the major attractions / tourist destination and their different dimensions in the country.

This unit gives complete information that makes Brazil and Argentina. A most preferred destination all over the world. This unit ends with the description of top places to visit in Brazil and Argentina, which help to choose a destination as per the interest of the tourists.

---

**4.9 CLUES TO ANSWERS:**

---

- Refer Sec.4.4
- Refer Sec.4.7.1
- Refer Sec.4.7.2
- Refer Sec.4.5.1
- Refer Sec.4.5.2
- Refer Sec.4.5
- Refer Sec.4.7

---

**REFERENCES:**

---

- Demographic. Brazilian Government. 2011. Retrieved 2011-10-08.
- Brazil is becoming an economic and political superpower. Transnational.org. Retrieved 2012-02-10.
- E. Bradford Burns; "A History of Brazil" Columbia University Press 1993 Page 352 ISBN 978-0-231-07955-6
- Cabral and Weinstocks 2010. Brazil: an emerging aid player. London: Overseas Development Institute

- Ministry of Tourism of Argentina: Regions
- The southern cone of South America, including Argentina and Brazil, the two regional powers, has recently become a pluralistic security community." See Emanuel Adler and Patricia Greve, "Overlapping regional mechanisms of security governance," in *Globalizing the Regional*, edited by Rick Fawn (UK: Cambridge University Press, 2009), p. 78.
- UNESCO World Heritage sites: Argentina

**Unit-5**

**France-Geography, Cultural Heritage, Economy and Important  
Tourist Places**

---

**Structure:**

**5.1 Objectives**

**5.2 Introduction**

**5.3 Geography of France**

**5.4 Cultural Heritage of France**

**5.5 Economy of France**

**5.6 Tourism in France**

**5.6.1 Demand for Tourism**

**5.6.1.1 Domestic Tourism**

**5.6.1.2 Outbound Tourism**

**5.6.1.3 Inbound Tourism**

**5.6.2 Supply of Tourism**

**5.6.2.1 Transport**

**5.6.2.2 Accommodation**

**5.7 Important Tourist Destination in France**

**5.8 Let's sum up**

**5.9 Clues to Answers**

**5.10 References**

**5.11 Model Question**

---

**5.1 OBJECTIVES:**

---

This unit aims at explaining France as the tourist destination and giving students the idea about the different geographical & cultural aspects of France and what makes the country amongst the top tourist destination in terms of tourism receipts & tourist arrivals. After going through the Unit 5 on France you will understand the following:

- To understand the geographical location of the country.
- To understand the different modes of transportation to the country.
- To understand the importance of culture in development of tourism.
- To understand the characteristics of tourism industry in France.
- To understand the natural attractions in the country.
- To understand the important tourist cities in the country.
- To understand the top tourist attractions in the country.

---

**5.2 INTRODUCTION:**

---

Unit 5 makes an effort to give the students idea about the France as a tourist destination and help them understand the different dimensions of the tourism attractions in the country. This unit attempts to through the light on the important cities, geographical aspects, man-made attractions, local art, culture, people, environment, geography, history, economy and government. etc. in the France. So that student can understand the reasons that what makes France most preferred destination all over the world.

In the 1st century BC, Julius Caesar occupied a large part of the current territory, which at the time was called Gaul and mostly inhabited by peoples of Celtic origin. It was the Franks who gave their name to this country which they conquered in the 5th century.

The constitution of the 5th Republic, proclaimed on 4 October 1958, stipulates that "France is an indivisible, secular, democratic and social republic." Paris is the capital and most populous city in France. French is the official language of France but each region has its own unique accent. The chief of state is the President and the head of government is the Prime Minister. With a population of over 66 million inhabitants, France is the second most populous country in Western Europe, after Germany and the 20<sup>th</sup> largest in the world.

France today is one of the most modern countries in the world and is a founding member of the European Union (EU). It is also a founding member of the United Nations and a member of the NATO, the G-8, the Latin Union and the G-20. It plays an influential global role as a one of the five permanent members of the United Nations Security Council wielding veto power and it is also one of eight acknowledged nuclear powers.

**FAST FACTS**

<b>Capital:</b> Paris
<b>Area:</b> 244,340 sq mi (632 834 km sq), 213,010 sq mi (551 695 km sq) of which are covered by Metropolitan France
<b>Population:</b> 65,821,000 inhabitants in 2014
<b>Language:</b> François
<b>Major Cities:</b> Bordeaux, Lille, Lyon, Marseille, Nice, Nantes, Strasbourg, Toulon, Toulouse
<b>Political System:</b> Republic
<b>Flag:</b> Three vertical stripes: blue, white, red
<b>National Anthem:</b> The Marseillaise
<b>National Moto:</b> Liberty, Equality, Fraternity
<b>Currency:</b> Euro
<b>National Day:</b> 14 July

---

**5.3 GEOGRAPHY OF FRANCE:**

---

The Republic of France, more commonly known as France is a country whose metropolitan territory is located in Western Europe and that also comprises a collection of overseas islands and territories located in North America, the Caribbean, South America, the Indian Ocean and the Pacific Ocean. France is the most expansive nation in the European Union and benefits from a wide variety of landscapes. It is about 80% the size of Texas. The French often refer to their nation as a hexagon to describe its six-sided

shape, and this term is also a symbol for the country. Located on Europe's western side, the metropolitan territory has over 3,400 miles (5500 km) of coastline stretching from the North Sea and along the Channel to the Atlantic Ocean in the west, and along the Mediterranean in the south. Several islands line the coasts, the largest of which is Corsica located in the Mediterranean.

France shares its borders with Belgium and Luxembourg in the north, Germany, Switzerland and Italy in the east, and with Spain in the south. It also includes overseas territories which include a great number of islands. The large mountain ranges are distributed in the east and the south while 4 great river basins cross the country. The Seine in the north, the Loire and the Garonne in the west, and the Rhône between Switzerland and the Mediterranean.

---

**5.4 CULTURAL HERITAGE IN FRANCE:**

---

The French are proud of their culture and their cultural heritage; and rightly so. France's cultural heritage is the fruit of a long history and French passion for the arts. Some 750 pieces of property are classified on the UNESCO World Heritage List. The architectural heritage is particularly important, whether it be religious, civilian, military or industrial. France's museums count exceptional collections bearing testimony to the history of art from around the world, such as the Louvre and the great schools of French paintings of the 19<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> centuries. France is also the country of great writers and distinguished composers, not to mention the homeland of cinema, renowned filmmakers, as well as actors and actresses who have been recognized around the world.

---

**5.5 ECONOMY OF FRANCE:**

---

France has a mixed economic system in which the economy includes a variety of private freedom, combined with centralized economic planning and government regulation. It has the fifth largest economic power in the world in nominal terms. France's economy currently revolves around services which employ more than 70% of the active population. Its dynamic agricultural sector makes France the leading agricultural producer in the European Union, while its viticulture is particularly important since France is the global leader in the production of wines and spirits.

The industrial sector is particularly developed in the agribusiness, automobile, building and public works, chemical industry, rail, aeronautics and aerospace, energy, and pharmaceutical and cosmetics sectors. The transport sector benefits from an efficient road and rail network.

New technologies hold an important role in the developing sectors and are mostly supported by big enterprises but also a small ribbon of SMEs. France is also renowned for its luxury and tourism sector. It is the leading tourist destination in the world.

---

**5.6 TOURISM IN FRANCE:**

---

Tourism is a fundamental sector in the French economy. France attracted 84.7 million foreign tourists in 2013, making it the most popular tourist destination in the world. It is third in income from tourism due to briefer visits. 20% more tourists spent less than half as much as they did in the United States. It has been the world's top tourist destination in terms of visitor arrivals, and one of the leading countries in terms of tourism receipts. It has 37 sites inscribed in UNESCO's World Heritage List and features cities of high cultural interest (Paris being the foremost, but also Toulouse, Strasbourg, Bordeaux, Lyon, and others), beaches and seaside resorts, ski resorts, and rural regions that many enjoy for their beauty and tranquillity (green tourism).

In 2012, travel and tourism directly contributed EUR77.7 billion to French GDP, 30% of which comes from international visitors and 70% from domestic tourism spending. The total contribution of travel and tourism represents 9.7% of GDP and supports 2.9 million jobs (10.9% of employment) in the country. Among the factors contributing to France's success in tourism are:

1. France is the largest country in Western Europe, boasting a natural resource base which includes an extensive coastline facing three seas, some of Europe's finest rivers – the Loire, Rhône, Seine and Garonne – and mountain areas such as the Massif Central, the Alps, Jura and Pyrenees – the last three forming natural boundaries.
2. It is unique among European nations in its latitudinal and altitudinal range, which gives rise to a variety of climates and landscape features. Mediterranean conditions are found in Provence, Languedoc-Roussillon and Corsica. A long dry summer with abundant sunshine, combined with mild winters, allows for a prolonged tourism season in world-famous resorts such as Nice and Saint-Tropez. The Atlantic and Channel coasts have less sunshine and a climate favouring the more active types of recreation. Eastern France has a continental climate with cold winters, while in the mountains, snow cover is uneven and variable – especially in those ski resorts situated at low or middle altitudes.
3. France is one of the world's leading economic powers, and has been at the fore-front of technological advance. However, most of this industrial development has taken place since the 2nd World War, and many city dwellers retain close links with the countryside. France has the biggest agricultural sector in Western Europe, offering the tourist a landscape that owes much of its charm to the prevalence of small-scale mixed farming, using fairly traditional methods of production.
4. French is the most widely spoken world language after English and Spanish. Cultural and business ties between Metropolitan France and the former colonies remain strong, determining the pattern of long-haul tourist flows to a large extent.
5. French culture has been widely emulated, starting in the middle Ages with the Gothic style of architecture and the ideal of chivalry. In the seventeenth century, Louis XIV's court and palace at Versailles was the role model for the upper classes throughout Europe,

and despite subsequent wars and revolutions, France remained pre-eminent in the world of haute couture and fashion. In the late nineteenth and early 20th centuries, French artists and architects were responsible for many innovations, such as impressionism, cubism, art nouveau and art deco.

6. France can offer a wide variety of tourism products based on these resources. For example:
- **Wine and Food Tourism:** Special interest holidays, including wine tasting tours of Burgundy and culinary short breaks for gourmets-foodies- in Normandy.
  - **Health, Wellness and Spa Tourism:** most of the numerous spas in France developed in the nineteenth century on the basis of mineral springs, while others on the coast offer thalassotherapy- seawater treatments. Some spas have upgraded their facilities to meet changing demands, but the sector has generally declined since the Second World War, in contrast to the situation in Germany and Italy.
  - **Pilgrimage Tourism:** The importance of pilgrimages in a country where, although secularism has long been official policy, 90 per cent of the population are, at least nominally Catholic.
  - Some shrines such as Mont St Michel in Normandy, Le Puy in the Auvergne, Rocamadour in Aquitaine and Vezelay in Burgundy, were well - established in medieval times, acting as 'gathering points' on the major pilgrim routes to Santiago de Compostela in Spain. In contrast, Lourdes and Lisieux became pilgrimage centres in the nineteenth century.
  - **Sailing / Sea cruising:** Sailing is another major activity, which has spawned a massive investment by the public and private sectors in coastal marina developments.
  - **Cultural Heritage Tourism:** Cultural tourism has a special place in France, both in tourism considered from an economic point of view in the attractiveness and visibility of Country: museums, monuments, festivals and cultural events drain each year million French and Foreign visitors.
  - **Religious Tourism:** France attracts also many religious pilgrims interested in spiritual tourism (e.g. Lourdes, a town in the Hautes-Pyrénées that hosts a few million visitors a year, the Taizé community has become one of the world's most important sites of Christian pilgrimage. Over 100,000 young people from around the world make pilgrimages to Taizé each year for prayer, Bible study, sharing emotions and communal work).
  - **Blue Tourism:** With the world's second largest maritime surface and 18,000km of coastline, France has long been a big maritime nation (with touristic and commercial ports). The blue tourism sub-sector (coastal and yachting and cruising) is the largest sector in the maritime and coastal economy in terms of turnover, added value and employment.
  - **Adventure Tourism:** The sector of adventure tourism in France offers many opportunities and solutions to its various geographical structures; the same country can offer experiences in water sports, aerial sports and land adventures both in summer and in wintertime.
  - Winter sports are offered in the mountain resorts of the Alps, Pyrenees and the Massif Central. France has been an innovator in ski instruction (the short ski method), and in the

development of purpose-built ski resorts above the tree line to guarantee a longer snow season. It has overtaken Austria and Switzerland as Europe's leading winter sports destination. Other activity and adventure-based types of tourism include:

- Cycling – here two influences are perhaps at work: the trend toward 'green tourism' and the role of the Tour de France in raising the international profile of the sport
- Boating on the superb network of rivers and canals
- Horse riding
- Canoeing on fast-flowing rivers, such as the Ardèche
- Surfing along the Atlantic coast
- Diving, along parts of the Mediterranean coast such as Corsica
- Mountain climbing in the Alps and Pyrenees
- Caving in the Dordogne region
- Golf, which is a fast-growing market, with developments in the coastal resorts of northern France.
- Hiking on the network of grandes randonnées (long-distance waymarked trails) which penetrate the scenic areas of France
- The Club Méditerranée holiday village concept in beach and sport tourism.
- **Wildlife Tourism:** France has a great range of natural habitats, and the diverse environments lead equally to a great diversity in the wildlife to be found - some species are found quite generally across France while other species are restricted to quite restricted areas of mountains or other specialised environments.
- **Business and Congress / Convention Travel (MICE)**

---

### **5.6.1 Demand for Tourism:**

---

France is seen as the leading country in the area of international tourism and this can be explained by the remarkable tourism richness of the country. The French tend to take their holidays in France, due to the country's range of tourism resources, and also the tradition of spending the summer in the south. As a consequence, the propensity of the French to travel abroad is lower than for most other west Europeans. However, this may change with the introduction of the Euro, cheap flights and increased leisure time. Yet, as recently as 1958, only 25 per cent of the French took a holiday. Both domestic and foreign tourism have since increased, and by the early years of the twenty-first century 60 per cent of the population took a holiday away from home.

---

#### **5.6.1.1 Domestic tourism:**

---

The changing economic and social geography of France has had implications for participation in tourism. Demographic changes since the Second World War have boosted the population by 19 million (to over 59 million), restored the imbalance between males and females and replenished both the low numbers of young people and the toll of two world wars. However, as early as the 1970s, France was experiencing an increased number of old people and a decrease in average family size. At the same time, France was

transformed from an essentially rural society into an industrial economy with people leaving the countryside for urban manufacturing and service centres. Accompanying these changes has been a growth in the numbers employed in the service sector, increased car ownership, social tourism initiatives and substantial rises in both disposable and discretionary incomes. This has led to an expansion of leisure spending as recreation and tourism have become a significant part of the French lifestyle.

In this respect, an important enabling factor has been the increased leisure time available to the French. Successive reductions of working hours resulted in a statutory working week of less than 40 hours. Also, the minimum school leaving age has been raised to 16 years and there is continuing pressure for early retirement. Since its introduction in 1936, annual paid holiday entitlement has grown to five weeks and many workers have six or more weeks. The fact that at least two of the weeks have to be taken between May and October has led to congestion in this peak holiday period. With the new millennium the working week was reduced to 35 hours – the lowest in Europe, further increasing the leisure time available, with the result that short breaks have trebled in popularity in subsequent years. The downside of the social legislation affecting labour is that employers may be reluctant to recruit staff, resulting in a high rate of unemployment compared to the USA or the UK.

France has a very high proportion of domestic holiday taking, with trips demonstrating a number of characteristics:

- They are lengthy, often three or four weeks, although there are signs that the traditional month away in August *en famille* is decreasing.
- In a country with such varied holiday opportunities, a wide distribution of holiday destinations is evident, though a general movement from north to south, as well as to the periphery, can be discerned, with a concentration in the mountains, and more so at the coast, which accounts for 40 per cent of all overnight stays.
- They are concentrated into the peak summer months (the majority of holidays are taken in July and August) although efforts are being made to spread the load with promotional campaigns, staggering of school holidays and the growth of winter holidays.
- The car is the most common means of domestic holiday transport.
- Self-catering, second homes and visiting friends and relatives account for the majority of holidays, simply because their cost commends them to families in peak season.
- The majorities of holidays are arranged independently, but works councils and other non-profit making organizations play an important role. These range from professional organizations, who own fully-equipped holiday accommodation and rent to members at competitive rates, to those involved in social tourism.

Social tourism represents a very strong movement in France and is significant for French domestic patterns of demand. There was a spectacular growth in social tourism initiatives

in the 1960s, and in the late 1990s the government established a new fund to allow the unemployed and poorer citizens to take a holiday, using spare capacity in the coastal resorts.

---

**5.6.1.2 Outbound tourism:**

---

Almost 20 million trips are taken abroad, mainly to Spain or Italy. This represents a growth in foreign tourism since 1945 that is rooted in the changing social and economic circumstances of France. Spending abroad by French nationals is low compared to receipts from inbound tourists and France therefore runs a surplus on its travel account. Inclusive tour holidays account for a smaller percentage of French travellers abroad than is the case in Britain or Germany, and most foreign travel is by car. However, long-haul tourism has shown consistent growth, with the USA and French-speaking destinations tending to be the most popular. The French travel trade is mainly concerned with outbound tourism, and in contrast to the UK is made up of many small and medium-sized enterprises. For example, the top ten operators in France generate one-third of the total turnover in this sector, compared to Britain where the equivalent figure is well over two-thirds. The most well-known tour operators are Nouvelles Frontières for package holidays, and Club Méditerranée, which pioneered the all-inclusive concept in tourism, and has over a hundred holiday villages worldwide.

---

**5.6.1.3 Inbound tourism:**

---

France ranks as one of the world's most popular tourist destinations with around 75 million arrivals annually in the new millennium. This has been helped by developments such as the Channel Tunnel and Disneyland Paris, as well as a number of sports events that attracted worldwide TV coverage.

The majority of visitors are from other countries in Western Europe, although new generators, such as Eastern Europe, are growing in significance. Germany, Belgium, the Netherlands and the UK account for most of the visits to France, attracted by the ease of road and ferry access and the range of French tourism resources. Most British tourists travel independently by car and tend to fall into two distinct types:

- Day visitors to the Channel ports such as Calais, where shopping in the hypermarkets for wine and beer is the main objective
- Those on a touring holiday or visiting their second homes in France. This type of visitor is attracted by the cultural differences between the two countries as expressed by the charcuterie, the bistros and the café lifestyle.

The geographical position of France does mean that it attracts a large number of day excursionists. Also, a large percentage of international tourists arrive in June, July or August to exacerbate the already acute concentration of French domestic holidays.

However, the growing popularity of winter holidays and the German trend to take second holidays in France in the off-peak may help to alleviate the problem.

France has always been popular for conventions and sales meetings and a government-run conference bureau coordinates the promotion and development of conference activities. Business travel is an important sector of French tourism, typically concentrated in major urban centres and using higher category hotels:

- Paris has for long been the world's leading conference destination, offering a range of venues, with the added incentive of a short-break holiday before or after the business trip
- Nice now boasts Europe's largest conference venue with its 'Acropolis Centre'
- Other important conference cities are Lyon, Marseille, Cannes and Strasbourg.

Event attractions have also played an important role as a 'pull factor' for foreign tourists. They include:

- The 1989 celebrations for the Bicentenary of the French Revolution
- The 1992 Winter Olympics at Albertville in the French Alps
- The 1994 celebrations of the 50th anniversary of the D-Day landings in Normandy
- The 1998 football World Cup.

---

### **5.6.2 Supply of tourism:**

---

Tourism is a fragmented industry in France, comprising many small, often family-run, enterprises. It is therefore difficult to gauge levels of employment in the industry. Official figures estimate half a million jobs in hotels and catering, official tourist offices and agencies, but this figure clearly falls short of the real total. A further 1.5 million jobs are attributed as an indirect result or 'spin off' from tourism.

---

#### **5.6.2.1 Transportation:**

---

The French transportation system is one of the best in Western Europe. A large network of road and rail transport covers the country. Public transport in French cities is usually well-organised and conveniently planned. In the large cities, metros, tramways and buses provide transportation for travellers over a large radius around the city centre. In the smaller towns or in the country, the local services or bus networks linked to the train stations provide access to the majority of the French communities.

Transport by car dominates tourism in France, accounting for two-thirds of inbound tourists and almost 80 per cent of domestic holidays. This reflects the demand for self catering and informal holidays, as well as the asset of a road system that ranks among the best in Europe, including 9000 kilometres of motorway and 28,500 kilometres of *routes nationales* (first-class highways). There are few long-distance bus services in France, so the

rail system handles a high proportion of inter-city travel, competing effectively with the private car and domestic air services.

The state-owned railways authority (SNCF) has invested in the electrification of main line services and in high-speed trains – the famous TGVs (speeds of 270 kilometres per hour, linking Paris to Lyon, Lille, Nantes, Bordeaux and Nice), servicing the large French and European cities and a local network linking the main cities to the smallest communities. The rail network continues to be focused on Paris, so that it is usually necessary to transfer between termini to make inter-regional connections.

Air transport services the large French cities and Paris boasts one of the largest international airports. International air connections are comprehensive, with three airports serving Paris, while Air France is one of the world's leading airlines.

Air Inter provides domestic services from Paris to over 40 destinations. Although opposed by the French government, the air transport sector has undergone deregulation as part of the European Commission's liberalization of air transport, allowing new airlines to enter the market. Cross-Channel ferries are the preferred transport mode for tourists from Britain.

---

**5.6.2.2 Accommodation:**

---

Tourist accommodations in France can be classified into several different types, according to the structure and types of amenities offered. Within each category, accommodations are also given star ratings. Hotels, tourist residences, holiday villages, outdoor accommodation (camping sites and holiday parks), furnished holiday rentals and Bed & Breakfasts are the main forms of tourist accommodation found in France.

---

**5.7 IMPORTANT TOURIST DESTINATION IN FRANCE**

---

Famous for its wines and cheeses, France is the world's most popular tourism destination receiving 82 million foreign tourists annually. Tourists are attracted by historical cities, a beautiful countryside, the castles of the Loire Valley, and Brittany and Normandy.

In addition, France offers an agreeable climate, some excellent beaches on the French Riviera, the Atlantic coast and the island of Corsica, wide possibilities for winter sports, most notably in the Alps and the Pyrenees, and a rich culture with food and wines that are among the most celebrated in the world.

**1. Eiffel Tower:** The Eiffel Tower is a symbol of Paris and one of the top tourist destinations in France. It remains the tallest structure in Paris today. The tower was built by Gustave Eiffel as the entrance arch for the International Exhibition of Paris of 1889 commemorating the centenary of the French Revolution. A towering spire that has come to symbolize the City of Lights, the Eiffel Tower is a must-see attraction for any visitor to

Paris. Nearly 200,000,000 people have toured the tower since it was completed in 1889. Surprisingly, the Eiffel Tower was never intended to be a permanent fixture.

**2. St. Tropez:** St. Tropez is located in south eastern France on the French Riviera. This city is a wildly popular place, often visited by models and celebrities in hopes of getting away from the limelight to enjoy the sun, sand and the beach. There are numerous beaches in St. Tropez. The Pampelonne beach is the biggest and most popular beach in St. Tropez. The major attraction in St. Tropez includes: The *Citadel and the Three Towers* is an elegant fortress that is home to the Naval Museum that houses spectacular Greek artworks. Soaring high above the port, there are three seaside towers to be seen; *Guillaume Tower, Potaret Tower and Jarlier tower*. The *Place aux Herbes* is another popular visitor spot in the city. The coastal footpath, on the other hand, is a hiking path that runs from the *Portalet Tower* to the *Pampelonne* beach. The *Place des Lices* is a delightful place where people go to for casual dining, entertainment and shopping.

**3. Chamonix:** Chamonix is a famous ski resort in the French Alps at the foot of Mont Blanc. It was the site of the first winter Olympic Games in 1924. In winter world class skiers and boarders push themselves to extremes on Europe's most challenging slopes while in the summer months Chamonix is a mecca for alpine mountaineers and mountain bikers.

**4. Palace of Versailles:** Built in 1624 by Louis XIII, the Palace of Versailles remained the official residence of the kings of France until October 1789 when the royal family was forced to return to Paris during the French Revolution.

The Palace's many stunning features include the Hall of Mirrors; a corridor lined with seventeen mirrored arches. In the Queen's bedchamber, visitors can view a hidden door through which Marie Antionette fled during the March on Versailles. With its seven salons and painted ceilings, the Grand Apartment of King Louis XVI is a sight to behold. A must-see is the palace's 250-acre formal gardens, which are designed in a geometrical pattern of trees, flowers and pathways.

**5. Mont Saint-Michel:** Mont Saint Michel is a small tidal island located just off the coast of Normandy. A spectacular and well-preserved Norman Benedictine Abbey of St. Michel stands at the peak of the rocky island, surrounded by the winding streets and convoluted architecture of the medieval town. The island is connected to the mainland by a causeway, which can be reached by buses from Rennes and Pontorson. During low tide, a muddy sandbar appears to provide access by foot, but tourists are strongly advised not walk across it because of the dangers presented by the powerful tides.

A visit to Mont Saint-Michel offers views of medieval walls, fortifications, a small village of less than 100 residents and narrow, winding streets lined with beautiful chapels, gardens, museums, shops and hotels. At the base of the old abbey is a wide selection of cafes and restaurants.

**6. Gorge du Verdon:** The Gorge du Verdon is a 25 Km. long canyon and rises a spectacular 700 meters from the Verdon River below. The river, which is named after its startling green emerald colour, is one of the Gorge du Verdon's most beautiful features. Water sport opportunities here include rafting, sailing, kayaking and water skiing.

**7. Chateau de Chambord:** This second most visited chateau in France (after Versailles), is a masterpiece of the French Renaissance. Construction of the Chateau de Chambord started in 1519 by King Francois I so he could hunt in the nearby forests. The cold and massive 440 rooms of the Chateau made it unpopular as an actual residence and Francois I himself stayed here for less than 40 days in total.

**8. Palais des Papes:** One of the largest and most important Gothic buildings in the world, the Palais des Papes (Pope's Palace) was built when Pope Clement V abandoned Rome in 1309 and settled in Avignon. The 3 meter (10 feet) thick walls, portcullises and watchtowers emphasize the castle-like look of the palace.

**9. Dune of Pyla:** Located in the Arcachon Bay area, the Dune of Pyla is the tallest sand dune in Europe. At the summit of the dune the view is spectacular with the Atlantic coast and the inlet of the bay on one side and a large pine forest on another.

**10. Chartres Cathedral:** The almost perfectly preserved Chartres Cathedral in the city of Chartres is one of the finest examples of the French High Gothic style. The majority of the original stained-glass windows survive intact, while the architecture has seen only minor changes since the early 13<sup>th</sup> century.

**11. WW1 Battlefields:** A sombre reflection of a terrible conflict, the World War One battlefields are among the most frequented tourist destinations in France. From the trenches of the Somme to the solemn cemeteries and memorials and through to the museums which tell the story of this sad time, these places remain a startling reminder of a history that should not be forgotten.

**12. Musee du Louvre:** One of the best-known major visitor attractions in France, the Louvre contains world-famous art, sculpture and artefacts from periods spanning over 2,000 years of history. Indeed, the very building itself is a 12th century fort turned medieval palace! The truth is that there's simply so much to see you'll never stand a chance of seeing it in a day, so better just to plan out those elements you wish to explore and keep it on your bucket list for another visit.

**13. Nimes Arena:** Not a standard entry on a list of France's top tourist attractions, we think Nimes Arena deserves to be here every time. What is probably the best-preserved Roman amphitheatre in the world – better even than Rome's Colosseum – Nimes Arena

really gives you an idea of what it would have been like for Roman spectators. It includes an interactive audio guide and some detailed exhibits to really bring the experience to life.

**14. Carcassonne:** Boasting a fairy-tale-like appearance and a history dating back to before the Roman era, Carcassonne is a picturesque fortified town in France's Languedoc-Roussillon region. There's a heap of great attractions to explore in Carcassonne, not least of which are the incredible double fortified 3km walls which boasts 52 separate towers.

**15. Pont du Gard:** It's sometimes easy to forget that France was a crucial part of the Roman Empire for hundreds of years, and indeed France's Roman heritage is often forgotten from lists of major tourist attractions. And quite frankly that's a shame, as France boasts some of the best Roman sites in the world. Among the most arresting of these is Pont du Gard, a wondrous and iconic ancient bridge and aqueduct which is now a spectacular sight to visit.

**16. D-Day Sites:** Scene of one of the largest and most crucial wartime operations in history, the Normandy beaches and other D-Day sights are among the top tourist attractions of France. Visitors can explore the beaches themselves, museums examining the history of D-Day as well as the locations of operations by Special Forces and airborne troops.

**17. Grotte de Font de Gaume:** France is home to some of the most fascinating prehistoric locations in the world and among the most visited of these ageless attractions is Grotte de Font de Gaume. A prehistoric cave in Les Eyzies, Grotte de Font de Gaume contains a series of fascinating wall paintings from this period and forms part of the UNESCO World Heritage of the Vezere Valley and its many prehistoric caves.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS:**

---

- Give a brief history and geographical location of France.
- What are the top tourist destinations of France?
- Write a short note on variety of tourism products in France.

---

**5.8 LET'S SUM UP:**

---

This unit gives ideas about the brief history of France. After going through this unit, we have understood that which are the important cities, their geographical location, culture, environment, history, economy and government etc. France can offer a great diversity of tourism resources and products, based on its countryside, coastal resorts and cultural heritage, and ranging from winter sports and adventure tourism in the Alps to sightseeing in Paris and the Loire Valley. Each region can offer different attractions, although tourism tends to play a more significant role in the coastal and mountain areas. We came to know the major attractions / tourist destination and their different dimensions in the

country. This unit gives complete information that makes France a most preferred destination all over the world.

This unit ends with the description of top places to visit in France, which help to choose a destination as per the interest of the tourists.

---

**5.9 CLUES TO ANSWERS:**

---

- Refer Sec. 5.2 and 5.3
- Refer Sec. 5.7
- Refer Sec. 5.7

---

**5.10 REFERENCES:**

---

- Boniface, G. Brian and Cooper, Chris: Worldwide Destinations: the geography of travel and tourism, Fourth Edition (2005), Elsevier Butterworth-Heinemann, ISBN 0 7506 5997 1
- Pasricha, Ashu: International Tourism, (2009) Regal Publication
- Infoplease.com <http://www.infoplease.com/country/france.html#ixzz3AGHPkCXL>
- <http://www.france.fr/en/institutions-and-values/france.html>
- <http://www.touropia.com/tourist-attractions-in-france/>
- <http://www.touropia.com/explore/france/paris/eiffel-tower/#sthash.fsc8wTTL.dpuf>
- <http://www.touropia.com/tourist-attractions-in-france/#sthash.TVIJHZMT.dpuf>
- <http://www.touropia.com/tourist-attractions-in-france/#sthash.UiXFsvk.dpuf>
- <http://www.touropia.com/explore/france/palace-of-versailles/#sthash.rokMa8Bt.dpuf>
- <http://www.touropia.com/tourist-attractions-in-france/#sthash.jIPXss00.dpuf>
- <http://www.touropia.com/explore/france/mont-saint-michel/#sthash.7y6Jvq5z.dpuf>
- <http://www.touropia.com/toursit-attractions-in-france/#sthash.VOm5d9o2.dpuf>
- <http://www.historvius.com/features/tourist-attractions-in-france/>
- [http://ec.europa.eu/enterprise/sectors/tourism/tourism-business-portal/documents/business/internationalisation/france\\_country\\_report.pdf](http://ec.europa.eu/enterprise/sectors/tourism/tourism-business-portal/documents/business/internationalisation/france_country_report.pdf)
- <http://www.everyculture.com/Cr-Ga/France.html#ixzz3lKf5nJ8A>
- [http://ec.europa.eu/enterprise/sectors/tourism/tourism-business-portal/documents/business/internationalisation/france\\_country\\_report.pdf](http://ec.europa.eu/enterprise/sectors/tourism/tourism-business-portal/documents/business/internationalisation/france_country_report.pdf)
- <http://famouswonders.com/st-tropez/>

---

**5.11 MODEL QUESTIONS:**

---

- Write short notes on variety of tourism products in France.

- What is the tourist attraction of Paris in France?
- Indicate the 10 biggest cities in the maps of France.
- Discuss in detail about the natural & historical tourist attractions in France?
- Indicate the top 10 places to visit in the map of France.

**Unit-6****Italy- History, Different Tourism Products, Ten Biggest Cities  
and Top Tourist Places**

---

**Structure:****6.1 Objectives****6.2 Introduction****6.3 History of Italy****6.4 Variety of Tourism Products in Italy****6.5 Italy's Ten Biggest Cities****6.6 Tourism Resources in Italy****6.7 Top Ten Places in Italy****6.8 Lets up Sum Up****6.9 Clues to Answers**

---

**6.1 OBJECTIVES:**

---

The aim of this unit is to provide information of Italy. Tourism point of view, this unit will guide to the student about the Geographical location and all Tourism aspects of Italy, who attract not only the domestic tourists but also the foreign tourists in terms of tourism receipts and tourist arrivals. After going through Unit 6 on Italy, You will understand the following:

- Geographical location of the country
- Historical richness of the Country
- Importance of Culture in development of Tourism
- Characteristics of Tourism industry in Italy
- Natural attractions in the Country
- Important tourist cities in the Country
- Top tourist attractions of the Country

---

**6.2 INTRODUCTION:**

---

Unit 6, makes an effort to gives the idea to the students about the Italy as a tourist destination and help them to understand the various dimensions of the Tourism attractions of the country. This unit attempts to through the light on the important cities, Geographical aspects, Attractions (Natural and Man-made), culture and its all aspects, environment, history, economy, government etc. in Italy. Some interesting facts about Italy:

- **Name:** Italian Republic
- **Population:** 60,820,696 (2012 estimate)
- **Capital:** Rome
- **Language:** Italian.
- **Religion:** Christianity more than 90% and others are Islam, Buddhism, Hinduism, Sikhism and Judaism
- **Government:** Unitary parliamentary constitutional Republic
- **Currency:** Euro

---

**6.3 HISTORY OF ITALY:**

---

Italy is a unitary parliamentary Republic in Southern Europe. To the north, it borders France, Switzerland, Austria, and Slovenia along the Alps. To the south, it consists of the entirety of the Italian Peninsula, Sicily, Sardinia –the two largest islands in the Mediterranean Sea–and many other smaller islands. The independent states of San Marino and the Vatican City are enclaves within Italy, while Campione d' Italia is an Italian exclave in Switzerland. The territory of Italy covers some 301,338 km<sup>2</sup> (116,347 sq mi) and is influenced by a temperate seasonal climate. With 60.8 million

inhabitants, it is the fifth most populous country in Europe, and the 23<sup>rd</sup> most populous in the world.

Rome the capital of Italy has for centuries been a political and religious centre of Western civilization as the capital of the Roman Empire and site of the Holy See. After the decline of the Roman Empire, Italy endured numerous invasions by foreign peoples, from Germanic tribes such as the Lombards and Ostrogoths, to the Byzantines and later, the Normans, among others. Centuries later, Italy became the birthplace of Maritime Republics and the Renaissance. Through much of its post-Roman history, Italy was fragmented into numerous city and regional states (such as the Kingdom of Sardinia, the Republic of Venice and the Church State), but was unified in 1861. In the late 19th century, through World War I and to World War II Italy possessed COLONIAL Empire.

Modern Italy is a democratic republic. It has been ranked as the world's 25th most-developed country and its Quality of life Index was ranked in the world's top ten in 2005. Italy enjoys a very high standard of living partially because of a high GDP per capita and has a high public education level. Italy is also one of the world's most globalised nations. It is a founding member of what is now the European Union and part of the Euro zone. Italy is also a member of the G7, G8, G20 and NATO adheres to the UN. It has the world's third -largest gold reserves, eighth-largest nominal GDP, tenth highest GDP (PPP) and the sixth highest government budget in the world. It is also a member state of organization for Economic Co-operation and Development the World Trade Organization, the Council of Europe and the United Nations. Italy has the world's eleventh-largest defence budget and shares NATO's nuclear weapons.

Italy plays a prominent role in European and global military, cultural and diplomatic affairs. The country's European political, social and economic influence makes it a major regional power.

Excavations throughout Italy reveal a Neanderthal presence dating back to the Paleolithic period, some 200,000 years ago, modern Humans arrived about 40,000 years ago. The Ancient peoples of pre-Roman Italy – such as the Umbrians, the Latins (from which the Romans emerged), Volsci, Samnites, the Celts and the Ligures which inhabited northern Italy, and many others – were Indo-European peoples; the main historic peoples of non-Indo-European heritage include the Etruscans, the Elymians and Sicani in Sicily and the prehistoric Sardinians. Between the 17th and the 11th century BC Mycenaean Greeks established contacts with Italy and in the 8th and 7th centuries BC Greek colonies were established all along the coast of Sicily and the southern part of the Italian Peninsula became known as Magna Graecia. Also the Phoenicians established colonies on the coasts of Sardinia and Sicily.

Ancient Rome was at first a small agricultural community founded around the 8th century BC that grew over the course of the centuries into a colossal empire encompassing

the whole Mediterranean Sea, in which Ancient Greek and Roman cultures merged into one civilization. This civilization was so influential that its legacy is profound in the world. Ancient Rome heavily influenced and left its mark in modern government, law, politics, administration, urban planning, engineering, philosophy, architecture, arts and many more aspects in the western world, forming the ground that Western civilization is based upon. In a slow decline since the late 2nd century AD, the empire finally broke into two parts in 395 AD: the Western Roman Empire and the Eastern Roman Empire. The western part – under the pressure of the Franks, the Vandals, the Huns, the Goths and other populations from Eastern Europe – finally dissolved in 476 AD, when the last western Emperor was deposed by the Barbarian chief Odoacer.

In the 14th and 15th centuries, Northern and upper Central Italy were divided into a number of warring city-states, the rest of the peninsula being occupied by the larger Papal States and Naples. The strongest among these city-states annexed the surrounding territories giving birth to the Signorie, regional states led by merchant families which founded local dynasties. Dominated by merchant oligarchies, they enjoyed a relative freedom and nurtured academic and artistic advancement. Warfare between the states was common, invasion from outside Italy confined to intermittent sorties of Holy Roman Emperors. These wars were primarily fought by armies of mercenaries known as Condottieri, bands of soldiers drawn from around Europe, but especially Germany and Switzerland, led largely by Italian captains.

Starting from the last two decades of the 19th century, Italy developed into a colonial power by forcing Somalia, Eritrea and later Libya and the Dodecanese under its rule. During World War I, Italy at first stayed neutral, but in 1915 signed the secret Treaty of London, entering the Entente on the promise of receiving Trento, Trieste, Istria and Dalmatia from the Austro-Hungarian Empire – as well as parts of the Ottoman Empire. During the war, more than 650,000 Italian soldiers died, and the economy collapsed. Under the Peace Treaties of Saint-Germain, Rapallo and Rome, Italy obtained most of the promised territories, including the Hungarian harbour of Fiume, but not Dalmatia (except Zara), allowing nationalists to define the victory as "mutilated".

The country is situated at the meeting point of the Eurasian Plate and the African Plate, leading to considerable seismic and volcanic activity. There are 14 volcanoes in Italy, four of which are active: Etna (the traditional site of Vulcan's smithy), Stromboli, Vulcano and Vesuvius. Vesuvius is the only active volcano in mainland Europe and is most famous for the destruction of Pompeii and Herculaneum. Several islands and hills have been created by volcanic activity, and there is still a large active caldera, the Campi Flegrei north-west of Naples.

Although the country comprises the Italian peninsula and most of the southern Alpine basin, some of Italy's territory extends beyond the Alpine basin and some islands are located outside the Eurasian continental shelf. These territories are the *comuni* of: Livigno,

Sexton, Innichen, Toblach (in part), Chiusaforte, Tarvisio, Graun im Vinschgau (in part), which are all part of the Danube's drainage basin, while the Val di Lei constitutes part of the Rhine's basin and the islands of Lampedusa and Lampione are on the African continental shelf.

Italy is subdivided into 20 regions (*regioni*, singular *regione*), five of these regions having a special autonomous status that enables them to enact legislation on some of their local matters. The country is further divided into 110 provinces and 8,100 municipalities. There are also 15 metropolitan cities established in 2009, but this administrative division is not yet operational.

Italy has a smaller number of global multinational corporations than other economies of comparable size, but there is a large number of small and medium sized enterprises, notoriously clustered in several industrial districts, which are the backbone of the Italian Industry. This has produced a manufacturing sector often focused on the export of niche market and luxury products, that if on one side is less capable to compete on the quantity, on the other side is more capable of facing the competition from China and other emerging Asian economies based on lower labour costs, with higher quality products.

The Italian Catholic Church is part of the global Roman Catholic Church, under the spiritual leadership of the Pope, curia in Rome, and the Conference of Italian Bishops.

In addition to Italy, two other sovereign nations are included in Italian-based dioceses, the enclaves of San Marino and Vatican City. There are 225 dioceses in the Italian Catholic Church, see further in this article and in the article Italy.

Italy has a rich Roman Catholic culture, especially as numerous Catholic saints, martyrs and popes were Italian themselves. All of the popes from 1523 to 1978 were from what is now Italy. Italy is also home to the greatest number of cardinals in the world, and is the country with the greatest number of Roman Catholic churches per capita.

Italy ranks as having the world's 2nd best healthcare system, and the world's 3rd best healthcare performance. Italy had the 12th highest worldwide life expectancy in 2010. As in many others western countries, seeing an increase in the proportion of overweight and obese people, with 34.2% of Italians self reporting as overweight and 9.8% self reporting as obese.

Italy is home to the greatest number of UNESCO World Heritage Sites (47) to date, and has rich collections of art, culture and literature from many different periods. The country has had a broad cultural influence worldwide, also because numerous Italians immigrated to other places during the Italian Diaspora. Furthermore, the nation has, overall, an estimated 100,000 monuments of any sort (museums, palaces, buildings, statues, churches, art galleries, villas, fountains, historic houses and archaeological remains).

Italy has a very broad and diverse architectural style, which cannot be simply classified by period, but also by region, because of Italy's division into several city-states until 1861. This has created a highly diverse and eclectic range in architectural designs.

Over the centuries, Italian art has gone through many stylistic changes. Italian painting is traditionally characterized by a warmth of colour and light, as exemplified in the works of Caravaggio and Titian, and a preoccupation with religious figures and motifs.

Italian painting enjoyed preeminence in Europe for hundreds of years, from the Romanesque and Gothic periods, and through the Renaissance and Baroque periods, the latter two of which saw fruition in Italy.

Other notable artists who fall within these periods include Michelangelo, Leonardo da Vinci, Donatello, Botticelli, Fra Angelico, Tintoretto, Bernini, and Raphael.

Italian theatre can be traced back to the Roman tradition which was heavily influenced by the Greek; as with many other literary genres, Roman dramatists tended to adapt and translate from the Greek.

For example, Seneca's *Phaedra* was based on that of Euripides, and many of the comedies of Plautus were direct translations of works by Menander. During the 16th century and on into the 18th century, Commedia dell'arte was a form of improvisational theatre, and it is still performed today. Travelling troupes of players would set up an outdoor stage and provide amusement in the form of juggling, acrobatics, and, more typically, humorous plays based on a repertoire of established characters with a rough storyline, called *Canoaccio*.

From folk music to classical, music has always played an important role in Italian culture. Instruments associated with classical music, including the piano and violin, were invented in Italy, and many of the prevailing classical music forms, such as the symphony, concerto, and Sonata, can trace their roots back to innovations of 16th and 17th century Italian music.

Italian cuisine is characterized by its extreme simplicity, with many dishes having only four to eight ingredients. Italian cooks rely chiefly on the quality of the ingredients rather than on elaborate preparation. Dishes and recipes are often the creation of grandmothers rather than of chefs, which makes many recipes ideally suited for home cooking.

---

#### **6.4 VARIETY OF TOURISM PRODUCTS:**

---

- **Sport and adventure tourism-** Italy has a long and successful tradition in individual sports as well. Cycling is a well represented sport in Italy. Italians have won the World Cycling Championship more than any other country, except Belgium.

The Giro d'Italia is a world-famous long-distance cycling race held every May, and constitutes one of the three Grand Tours, along with the Tour de France and the Vuelta a Espana, each of which last approximately three weeks.

Alpine skiing is a very popular sport in Italy, with more than 2 million amateur skiers, most of them in the north and in the center. Italian skiers achieved good results in the Winter Olympic Games, World Cup, and World Championship.

Tennis has a significant following near court and by television. Italian professional tennis players are almost always in the top 100 world's ranking of male and female players.

Italy won the David Cup in 1976 and the Fed Cup in 2006 and 2009. Motorsports are also extremely popular in Italy. Italy has won, by far, the most world Grand prix motorcycle racing. Italian Scuderia Ferrari is the oldest surviving team in Grand Prix racing, having competed since 1948, and statistically the most successful Formula One team in history with a record of 15 drivers' championships and 16 constructors' championships. Skiing, Cycling, Windsurfing and Sailing is very popular in Italy.

- **Wine Tourism:** Wine tourism is very popular in Italy, the places are given below for producing various types of wines, these are:

- **Chianti-** This is without a doubt the most well-known Italian red wine in the world. Born from the combination of the Sangiovese vines with the traditional Canaiolo and Colorino. Its color is ruby red, tending to garnet.
- **Montalcino-** This is probably the most famous wine of Italy. You will be accompanied to the visit of two small wineries that produce great wines.
- **San Gimignano-** San Gimignano is the poster child for Tuscany and the epitome of a medieval Italian hilltop town. It is famous for the *Vernaccia di San Gimignano* which is a white wine made from grapes grown around Tuscany.
- **Valpolicella & Amarone-** The lush green hills that surround Verona have been the home of indigenous vines for over 2,000 years. We'll visit celebrated vineyards each producing their own versions of the Amarone "the big dry one".
- **Barolo -** The vineyards of the Barolo DOCG zones are not extensive, but they are the most carefully charted stands of vines anywhere in Italy.

- **Cruise tourism-** A cruise in Italy offers you the chance to immerse yourself in everything Italy has to offer. Cruises depart from several ports around the country, including Civitavecchia, the gateway port to Rome. A cruise to another of Italy's famous cities takes to one of the most romantic in Europe.

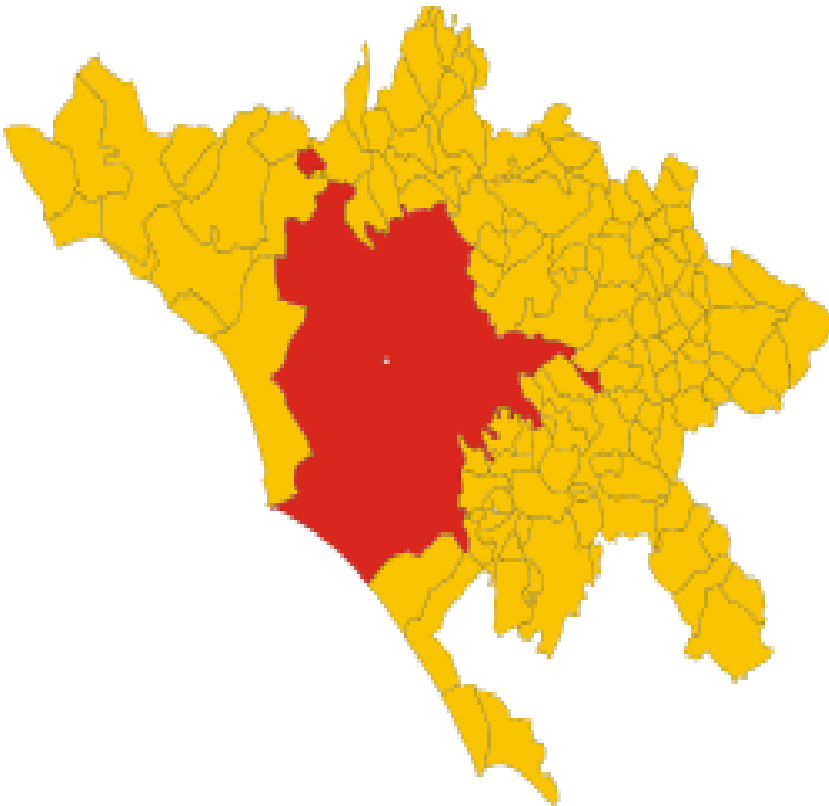
Culture, wine, tranquil beauty, dramatic people and fantastic views-a cruise in Italy has it all. It is a country celebrated for the arts, celebrated for its cuisine and celebrated for its stunning natural scenery and historical backgrounds. As one of the most popular vacation countries in Europe, it caters for all needs. All seasons being good to visit; in summer it is an international playground, with visitors from all continents enjoying Italy's famous resorts; spring comes early and autumn lingers. All in all, Italy has much to offer the discerning traveler looking for an authentic European adventure.

---

**6.5 ITALY'S TEN BIGGEST CITIES:**

---

**1. Rome:** Rome is the capital of modern Italy. Rome is full of history everywhere you look. It has many ancient monuments, interesting medieval churches, beautiful fountains, museums, and Renaissance palaces. Modern Rome is a bustling and lively city and has some excellent restaurants and nightlife. The Vatican and St. Peter's are also found in Rome.



**2. Venice:** Venice is a unique city built on water in the middle of a lagoon. Venice is one of Italy's most beautiful and romantic cities as well as one of the most popular for visitors to Italy. The heart of Venice is Piazza San Marco with its magnificent church. There are many museums, palaces, and churches to visit and wandering along Venice's canals is interesting. Venice is in the northeast of Italy and historically was a bridge between East and West.

**3. Florence:** Florence is one of the most important Renaissance architectural and art centers. Its Duomo and Baptistery are magnificent but crowded with tourists as is their large piazza. Florence has several interesting museums with many famous paintings and sculptures. There are also Medici palaces and gardens. Florence is in Tuscany.

**4. Milan:** Milan, one of Europe's richest cities, is known for stylish shops, galleries, and restaurants and has a faster pace of life than most Italian cities. It also has a rich artistic and cultural heritage. Its Duomo, with its beautiful marble facade, is magnificent. La Scala is one of the world's most famous opera houses.

**5. Naples:** Naples is one of Italy's most vibrant cities. It lies on the coast south of Rome and is the most important city in southern Italy. Naples has recently undergone some renovation but still retains much of its old character. It holds many historical and artistic treasures.

**6. Verona:** Verona is known for the story of Romeo and Juliet and for its Roman Arena, the third largest in Italy and the venue for a top opera festival. Verona has a good medieval center, Roman remains, and an interesting castle complex. It's the fourth most visited city in Italy and well worth a stop on a northern Italy travel itinerary.

**7. Turin:** Turin, host of the 2006 Winter Olympics, is a major cultural hub with excellent museums, elegant shops, and good restaurants. There are also some very nice examples of baroque architecture and historic palaces. Turin has many historic cafes, artisan workshops, and arcades. Turin is in the northwest of Italy, between the Po River and the foothills of the Alps.

**8. Bologna:** Bologna is known for its beauty, wealth, cuisine, and left-wing politics. Its streets are lined with beautiful arcades, making it a good place to walk even in the rain. It has one of Europe's oldest universities and a nice medieval center. There are several attractive squares, lined with buildings with nice porticoes. Bologna is the capital of the Emilia-Romagna region in northern Italy.

**9. Perugia:** Perugia festival in the summer and its University for Foreigners is a great place to learn Italian. It's a walled city on a hilltop with great views over the valley and has several important monuments and a good central square. Its history goes back to the ninth century BC. Perugia is in the center of Italy and is the capital of the region of Umbria is a very cosmopolitan city and home to two universities. It hosts a world-famous jazz.

**10. Genoa:** Genoa, on the northwest coast of Italy, is Italy's principal seaport. Genoa was a 2004 European Culture Capital; money flowed into the port city made famous by Columbus and now it's a better place than ever to visit. Genoa has a fascinating aquarium, an interesting port area, and a historic center said to be the largest medieval quarter in Europe, with a wealth of churches, palaces, and museums.

---

**6.6 TOURISM RESOURCES IN ITALY:**

---

With more than 46.1 million tourists a year, Italy is the fifth highest tourist earner, and fifth most visited country in the world, behind France (79.5 million), United State (62.3 million), China (57.6) and Spain (56.7 million). People mainly visit Italy for its rich art, cuisine, history, fashion and culture its beautiful coastline and beaches, its mountains, and priceless ancient monuments. Italy also contains the most World heritage sites than any other country in the world.

Tourism is one of Italy's fastest growing and most profitable industrial sectors, with estimated revenue of \$43.0 billion. People have visited Italy for centuries, yet the first to visit the peninsula for touristic reasons were aristocrats during the Grand Tour, beholding in the late 17th century, and flourishing in the 18th century. Rome, as the capital of the powerful and influential Roman Empire, attracted thousands to the city and country from all over the empire, which included most of the Mediterranean, Northern Africa, mainland Great Britain (England) and the parts of the Middle East. Traders and merchants came to Italy from several different parts of the world.

Islands such as Capri became popular in the late 18th century and first decade of the 19th century.

---

**Northwest Italy:**

---

**Regions: Piedmont, Liguria, Lombardy and Valle d Aosta:** Home of the Italian Riviera, including Portofino, and of Cinque Terre. There are many historic cities in this part of Italy such as Turin, the manufacturing capital of Italy, Milan, the business and fashion capital of the country, Bergamo, with it's stunning medieval city-center and the important port of Genoa which share the region's visitors with beautiful landscapes like the Lake Como area.

---

**Northeast Italy:**

---

**Regions: Emilia-Romagna, Friuli-Venezia Giulia, Trentino-Alto Adige/ Sudtirol and Veneto:** This part of Italy also boasts several important tourist attractions, such as the canal-filled city of Venice, the cities of Verona, Vicenza, Padua, Trento, Bolzano, Bologna, Ferrara, Piacenza, Parma, Ravenna and Trieste. There are also several mountain ranges such as the Dolomites, the Carnic and Julian Alps and first-class ski resorts like Cortina

d' Ampezzo and Madonna di Campiglio. These four regions offer much to see and do. The area has a unique cuisine, including wines and dishes such as Prosecco and Tiramisu in Veneto and Cotechino, Ragu and Parma ham in Emilia Romagna, San Daniele ham and white D.O.C. wines in Friuli-Venezia Giulia.

---

**Central Italy:**

---

**Regions: Lazio, Abruzzo, Marche, Tuscany and Umbria:** This area is possibly the most visited in Italy and contains many popular attractions. Rome boasts the remaining wonders of the Roman Empire and some of the world's best known landmarks such as the Colosseum. Florence, regarded as the birthplace of the Italian Renaissance, is Tuscany's most visited city, whereas nearby cities like Siena, Pisa, and Lucca also have rich cultural heritages. Umbria's population is small but it has many important cities such as Perugia and Assisi. The natural parks of Abruzzo include the Abruzzo National Park, the National Park of Gran Sasso and Monti Della Laga the National Park Maiella and Sirente Velino which every year attract thousands of visitors due to their nature and rare species of wildlife such as Abruzzo chamois; also the region boasts many natural reserves and areas protect.

---

**Southern Italy:**

---

The Forum with Vesuvius in the distance. Pompeii is Italy's third and the world's 48th most visited destination, with over 2.5 million tourists a year.

**Regions: Apulia, Basilicata, Calabria, Campania and Molise:** Naples is the most visited city in the area, and the ruins of Pompeii are the most visited sights. Other important tourist destinations include the Amalfi Coast and Ravello, Apulia and the beaches and sights of Calabria, as well as up-and-coming agritourism make this less visited region become increasingly popular.

**Sicily:** The largest island in the country is a diverse and popular tourist island, famous for its archaeology, seascape and unique Sicilian cuisine.

**Sardinia:** Sardinia is a large island some 250 kilometers west of the Italian coastline. It includes several popular tourist attractions and has several beaches and archaeological ruins.

**Calabria:** Despite the wonderful seas that surround Calabria and the cultural and historical heritage, Calabria hasn't attracted many tourists. An example of cities with big historical heritage are Sibari, which has the "Sibari archeological site" that actually shows the ruins of the 3000-year-old city of Magna Graecia "Sybaris" and Rossano, on the Jonio sea which has the Codex Purpureus, a 5th century gospel, wonderful sea and even mountains. On Tirrenian sea we find Tropea, with wonderful sea and Pizzo Calabro,

famous in Italy for its particular ice cream. Then there's Reggio Calabria; the poet Gabriele D'Annunzio said that Reggio Calabria has the best kilometer in Italy. He was talking about Reggio Calabria's promenade.

**The Colosseum**, Rome's second and the world's 39th most popular tourist attraction, with 4 million tourists a year.

**Milan cathedral:** Milan cathedral is a busy tourist spot in Milan. It is the world's 4th biggest cathedral and took over five centuries to complete.

Milan is one of European Union's most important tourist destinations, and Italy's second. It places itself 42nd and 52nd respectively, most visited city in the world. According to a particular source, 56% of international visitors to Milan are from Europe, whilst 44% of the city's tourists are Italian, and 56% are from abroad.

The most important European Union markets are the United Kingdom (16%), Germany (9%) and France (6%). According to the same study, most of the visitors who come from the USA to the city go on business matters, whilst Chinese and Japanese tourists mainly take up the leisure segment.

The city boasts several popular tourist attractions, such as the city's Duomo and Piazza, the Teatro alla Scala, the San Siro Stadium, the Vittorio Emanuele II Gallery, the Sforza Castle, the Pinacoteca di Brera and the Via Monte Napoleone. Most tourists visit sights such as Milan Cathedral, the Sforza Castle and the Teatro alla Scala, however, other main sights such as the Basilica of Sant' Ambrogio, the Navigli and the Brera district are less visited and prove to be less popular.

The city also has numerous hotels, including the ultra-luxurious Town house Galleria, which is the world's first seven-star hotel, ranked officially by the Societe Generale de Surveillance, and one of the leading hotels of the world. The average stay for a tourist in the city is of 3.43 nights, whilst foreigners stay for longer periods of time, 77% of which stay for a 2-5-night average. Of the 75% of visitors which stay in hotels, 4-star ones are the most popular (47%), whilst 5-stars, or less than 3-stars represent 11% and 15% of the charts respectively.

---

## **6.7 TOP 10 PLACES IN ITALY:**

---

**1. Rome:** Is the capital and the largest city of Italy. Whether it is exploring the ancient roman forum and walking where Caesar did, seeing the Vatican, or making a wish at the Trevi Fountain, Rome is an obvious stop for anyone's trip to Italy.

**2. Florence:** Florence is Italy's second biggest city. Florence is the birthplace of the renaissance and home to the David. For art lovers and foodies, Florence offers an array of goodies. Tuscany is a place in Florence which is the home of Italy's premier wine country.

**3. Venice:** The city of lovers- Venice is a great place for couples and families. Hang out in St. Marka Square, stroll through tiny alleys, and take a gondola ride through the canals. Venice may be an expensive city but it is worth every Euro.

**4. Cinque Terra:** Five towns located on cliffs overlooking the ocean, Cinque Terra is simply breathtaking. Spend the day walking the 12km trail that connects each town, exploring their tiny streets, and stopping at little cafes. Explore the olive groves in the hills and relax yourself with a shot of Limon cello.

**5. Sicily:** Sicily may be famous for the mafia but it has much more than that. Sicily has a long history of foreign domination and the result is an eclectic culture that mixes it all in. Every little city seems to have its own culture. Come and explore the countryside and well-preserved towns.

**6. Turin:** Turin is a major city in northern Italy. Turin is well-known as the home of the Shroud of Turin and host of the 2006 Winter Olympics. Located right near the alps, with the Po River flowing through the city, and villas dotting the surrounding area, Turin is trying to attract more tourists so get there before the crowds.

**7. Capri:** Capri is an Italian island in the Gulf of Naples. It has been a major resort destination since Roman times and is popular with the well-to-do of the world. During summers, the island sees a lot of tourists, who mostly stick to the major towns. Get out of the towns and the island is yours.

**8. Sorrento:** The gateway to the Amalfi coast, Sorrento is located on the Bay of Naples. It is especially busy here in the summer time but the city is big enough and has enough to offer for all its visitors. This sea sport has been active for thousands of years and has a rich history. Any journey down south would be incomplete without a visit.

**9. Abruzzo:** Abruzzo holds some of Italy's best-preserved medieval and Renaissance hill towns. Abruzzo is an excellent place to see some of Italy's best-preserved landscape.

**10. San Gimignano:** San Gimignano is a small walled medieval hill town in Tuscany. It is famous for its medieval architecture, especially its high towers. Of the 72 that once existed, 13 remain today. San Gimignano is a popular destination for day trippers from Florence, but spend the night here and the city quiets down and takes you back in time.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS:**

---

- Write a short note on variety of tourism products in Italy.
- What are the tourist attractions of Italy?
- Make a list of top 10 biggest cities of Italy.
- Indicate the 10 biggest cities in the maps of Italy.
- Indicate the top 10 places to visit in the map of Italy.
- Give the brief cultural history of Italy.

---

**6.8 LETS UP SUM UP:**

---

This unit gives ideas about the brief history of Italy. After going through this unit, we understood about the important cities, their geographical location, culture, environment, history, economy and government etc. We came to know the major attractions / tourist destination and their different dimensions in the country. This unit gives complete information that makes Italy a most preferred destination all over the world.

This unit ends with the description of top places to visit in Italy, which help to choose a destination as per the interest of the tourists.

---

**6.9 CLUES TO ANSWERS:**

---

- Refer Sec. 6.4
- Refer Sec. 6.7
- Refer Sec. 6.5
- Refer Sec. 6.5
- Refer Sec. 6.7
- Refer Sec. 6.3

---

**REFERENCES:**

---

- Hacken, Richard. History of Italy: "Primary Documents". EuroDocs: Harold B. Lee Library: Brigham Young University. Retrieved 6 March 2010.
- *Italy - Eyewitness Travel Guides*. DK. 2005. ISBN 1-4053-0781-1.
- Italy History- Italian History Index (in Italian, English). European University Institute, the World Wide Web Virtual Library. 1995-2010. Retrieved 6 March 2010
- Kimbell, David R. B (29 April 1994). Italian Opera. Google Books. ISBN 978-0-521-46643-1. Retrieved 20 December 2009.
- Mack Smith, Denis (1997). *Modern Italy; A Political History*. Ann Arbor: The University of Michigan Press. ISBN 0-472-10895-6
- *Northern Italy - Insight Guides*. APA Publications. 2004. ISBN 981-234-903-0.
- Pisa, Nick (12 June 2011). Italy overtakes France to become world's largest wine producer. *The Telegraph*. Retrieved 17 August 2011.

- Report for Selected Countries and subjects. Imf.org. 16 April 2013. Retrieved 17 April 2013.
- The Middle East and Europe. Google Books. 24 November 1998. Retrieved 30 May 2011.

**Unit-7**

**Spain-History, Different Tourism Products, Big Cities and Top  
Tourist Places**

---

**Structure:**

**7.1 Objectives**

**7.2 Introduction**

**7.3 History of Spain**

**7.4 Variety of Tourism Products in Spain**

**7.5 Spain's Ten Biggest Cities**

**7.6 Tourism Resources in Spain**

**7.7 Top Ten Places in Spain**

**7.8 Lets up Sum Up**

**7.9 Clues to Answers**

---

**7.1 OBJECTIVES:**

---

The aim of this unit is to provide information of Spain, Tourism point of view. This unit will guide to the student about the Geographical location and all Tourism aspects of Spain, who attract not only the domestic tourists but also the foreign tourists in terms of tourism receipts and tourist arrivals. After going through Unit 7 on Spain, You will understand the following:

- Geographical location of the country
- Historical richness of the Country
- Importance of Culture in development of Tourism
- Characteristics of Tourism industry in Spain
- Natural attractions in the Country
- Important tourist cities in the Country
- Top tourist attractions of the Country

---

**7.2 INTRODUCTION:**

---

Unit 7, makes an effort to gives the idea to the students about the Spain as a tourist destination and help them to understand the various dimensions of the Tourism attractions of the country. This unit attempts to through the light on the important cities, Geographical aspects, Attractions (Natural and Man-made), culture and its all aspects, environment, history, economy, government etc. in Spain. Some interesting facts about Spain:

- **Name:** Kingdom of Spain
- **Motto:** Plus, Ultra (Latin)-Further Beyond
- **Population:** 47,265,321 (2012 estimate)
- **Capital:** Madrid
- **Language:** Spanish
- **Religion:** Catholicism, Islam and Judaism.
- **Government:** Unitary parliamentary constitutional monarchy
- **Currency:** Euro (EUR)

---

**7.3 HISTORY OF SPAIN:**

---

Spain is located on the Iberian Peninsula in Southwestern Europe. Its mainland is bordered to the south and east by the Mediterranean Sea except for a small land boundary with the British Overseas Territory of Gibraltar; to the north and north east by France, Andorra and the Bay of Biscay; and to the northwest and west by the Atlantic Ocean and Portugal.

- Spanish territory also includes the Balearic Islands in the Mediterranean, the Canary Islands in the Atlantic Ocean off the African coast, and two autonomous cities in North Africa, Ceuta and Melilla, that border Morocco, plus Alboran, Chafarina Islands, Alhucemas, Velez de la Gomera Islands, and other small islets including Perejil. Furthermore, the town of Llívia is a Spanish exclave situated inside French territory. With an area of 505,992 square kilometres (195,365 sq mi), Spain is the second largest country in Western Europe and the European Union and the fifth largest country in Europe.
- Spain emerged as a unified country in the 15th century, following the marriage of the Catholic Monarchs and the completion of the reconquest, or Reconquista, of the Iberian Peninsula in 1492. It was an important source of influence to other world regions during the early modern period, when it became a global empire that has left a legacy of over 500 million Spanish speakers today, making it the world's second most spoken first language.
- Spain is a democracy organised in the form of a parliamentary government under a constitutional monarchy. It is a developed country, the thirteenth largest economy in the world by nominal GDP, and has high living standards, including the tenth-highest quality of life index rating in the world. It is a member of the United Nations, NATO, OECD, and WTO.
- Rome left in Spain four powerful social elements: the Latin language, Roman law, the municipality and the Christian religion. After the fall of the Roman Empire, the Suevi, Vandals and Alans entered Spain, but they were defeated by the Visigoths who, by the end of the 6th century, has occupied virtually the whole of the Peninsula.
- The Canary Islands became part of Spanish territory (1495), the hegemony of Spain in the Mediterranean, to the detriment of France, was affirmed with the conquest of the Kingdom of Naples, and Navarre was incorporated into the Kingdom.
- Tourism in Spain was developed during the 1960s and 1970s, when the country became a popular place for summer holidays, especially for tourists from the British Isles, France, Central Europe and Scandinavia. In 2007, Spain became the second most visited country of the world after France. That year, almost 60 million foreign tourists were received, according to the World Tourism Organization, which has its headquarters in Madrid.

---

**7.4 VARIETY OF TOURISM PRODUCTS:**

---

Sport or fun tourism have been developed in these areas, including such famous cities as Barcelona and Valencia, the biggest harbours of the Spanish Mediterranean coast.

Beach tourism also has been involved in the beautiful beaches of Spain. Many coastal or island places also have great ecological and natural importance. Theme Parks like port

Aventura, Terra Mitica or diverse water-fun parks are also popular. Cultural tourism, Business tourism and monumental tourism is very popular in Spain.

---

**Nature and rural tourism:**

---

Spain enjoys a diverse landscape and is full of places with great ecologic value all over the Spanish territory, including the Ordesa Valley and Monte Perdido between the autonomous community of Aragon and France, in the Pyrenees. Spain is a very mountainous country, but also has plains. The largest plain is the Meseta Central, with a "Castilian" landscape, full of prairies. There are also several wetlands with ecologic value, including the Picos de Europa national park, the Donana national park, the Albufera of Valencia, the Lago de Sanabria (one of the largest lakes of Spain), the Lagunas de Ruidera and the Tablas de Daimiel national park. North Spain is usually called green Spain because of its lush landscape, due to wet and rainy weather. However, the Canary Island have an exotic volcanic landscape (including the Teide volcano, that is also the highest peak of Spain). Spain has a lot of importance in terms of archeology and paleontology including Atapuerca and the Cave of Altamira.

---

**Cinematic Tourism:**

---

A website records the locations, tales and details of more than 600 English-language films that have been shot on Spanish soil, from classics such as Doctor Zhivago to little-known works like Monster Dog. Almost 200 English-language movies have used Madrid as a location. Spanish cinema has achieved major international success including Oscars for recent films such as Pan's Labyrinth and Volver. Cultural and heritage tourism

---

**Cruise Tourism:**

---

Spain is becoming an ever more popular departure and stopover point for Mediterranean cruises. Year after year, more and more people opt to spend a few days at Mediterranean destinations in Spain at the beginning or end of their cruises, to discover cities such as Barcelona (Europe's number one cruise departure port), Palma de Mallorca, Valencia and Malaga. Take note - there is much to see.

Cruise holidays are a rapidly growing phenomenon in Spain. The number of passengers coming ashore from cruise liners at Spanish ports is on the increase year by year. Many tourists from all over the world choose a Mediterranean cruise for their holidays, and Spanish cities are becoming ever more important stops on these itineraries. They are destinations with loads to offer, with art, culture, entertainment, excellent beaches and delicious gastronomy.

---

**Art and culture in Barcelona:**

---

Besides stopovers at places of interest en route, there are also many cruises that combine dry-land stays with the time at sea, either before embarking or at the end of the cruise. This means that if passengers are keen on a particular place, then they can take their time to discover it fully. In Spain, *Barcelona* and *Majorca* are two favourite places for tourists to spend a few days before or after their cruise.

Barcelona is modern and cosmopolitan city and design the latest trends live side by side with tradition and history, creating a unique atmosphere. Stroll through the old part of the city, taking in the busy Rambla Avenue, the lively port area and the *Gothic Quarter*, with its medieval atmosphere. The stunning Modernist heritage, where the work of Gaudí stands out especially, with places such as the *Sagrada Familia* Cathedral, *Casa Batllo* House and *Guell Park*, which have the UNESCO World Heritage designation.

---

**Mediterranean spirit:**

---

Majorca, in the *Balearic Islands*, is close behind where Mediterranean's most beautiful coves and beaches are situated. There are many different options to enjoy this destination: for example, discover the beautiful monuments of the capital *Palma*, an excursion into the *Sierra de Tramuntana Mountains* or even play golf at one of the hole courses to be found on the island. Another place becoming more popular to board a cruise is **Malaga**. Lovely city on the *Costa del Sol*, in *Andalusia*, too. It has excellent golf courses, wonderful beaches and is the birthplace of Pablo Picasso. A visit to its *Picasso Museum* will allow taking a close look at the work of this artistic genius.

---

**7.5 SPAIN'S TEN BIGGEST CITIES:**

---

**1. Madrid:** Madrid is the capital and largest city of Spain. It is the third largest city in the European Union after London and Berlin and its metropolitan area is the third largest in the European Union after London and Paris. The city spans a total of 604.3 km<sup>2</sup> (233.3 sq mi).

The city is located on the Manzanares River in the centre of both the country and the Community of Madrid (which comprises the city of Madrid, its conurbation and extended suburbs and villages); this community is bordered by the autonomous communities of Castile and Leon and Castile-La Mancha.

As the capital city of Spain, seat of government and residence of the Spanish monarch, Madrid is also the political, economic and cultural centre of Spain.

**2. Barcelona:** Barcelona is the capital of Catalonia and the second largest city in Spain, after Madrid. With an area of 803 km<sup>2</sup> (310 sq mi), being the sixth-most populous urban area in the European Union after Paris, London, the Ruhr, Madrid and Milan.

It is also the largest metropolis on the Mediterranean Sea. It is located on the Mediterranean coast between the mouths of the rivers Llobregat and Besos and is bounded to the west by the Serra de Collserola ridge (512 m/1,680 ft).

Barcelona is today one of the world's leading tourist, economic, trade fair/exhibitions and cultural-sports centres, and its influence in commerce, education, entertainment, media, fashion, science, and the arts all contribute to its status as one of the world's major global cities. Indeed, it is a major cultural and economic centre in southwestern Europe (Iberian Peninsula), 26th in the world (after Moscow, before Dubai) and a growing financial centre (Diagonal Mar and Gran Via).

It is the fourth economically powerful city by GDP in the European Union and 35th in the world with an output amounting to €177 billion. The city was ranked Europe's third and one of the world's most successful as a city brand. At the same time, the city was ranked Europe's fourth best city for business and fastest improving European city, with growth improved by 17% per year.

Barcelona is the transport hub with one of Europe's principal ports, Barcelona international airport, which handles above 35 million passengers per year, extensive motorway network and also is a hub of high-speed rail, particularly that which is intended to link Spain with France and the rest of Europe as the second longest in the world.

**3. Valencia:** The city is situated on the banks of the Turia River, on the eastern coast of the Iberian Peninsula and the western part of the Mediterranean Sea, fronting the Gulf of Valencia.

It is the Capital of the autonomous community of Valencia and the third largest city in Spain after Madrid and Barcelona. The Port of Valencia is the 5th busiest container port in Europe and the largest on the Mediterranean Sea, with a trade volume of 4.21 million TEU's.

Its historic centre is one of the largest in Spain, with approximately 169 acres; this heritage of ancient monuments, views and cultural attractions makes Valencia one of the country's most popular tourist destinations. Major monuments include Valencia Cathedral, the Torres de Serranos, the Torres de Quart, the Llotja de la Seda (declared a World Heritage Site) by UNESCO in 1996), and the Ciutat de les Arts i les Ciències (City of Arts and Sciences), an entertainment-based cultural and architectural complex designed by Santiago Calatrava and Felix Candela.

The Museu de Belles Arts de Valencia houses a large collection of paintings from the 14th to the 18th centuries, including works by Velazquez, El Greco and Goya, as well as an important series of engravings by Piranesi . The Institut Valencia d'Art Modern (Valencian Institute of Modern Art) houses both permanent collections and temporary exhibitions of contemporary art and photography.

**4. Seville:** Seville is the capital and largest city of the autonomous community of Andalusia and the Province of Seville, Spain. It is situated on the plain of the River Guadalquivir. It is the fourth-largest city in Spain and the 30th most populous municipality in the European Union.

Its Old Town, the third largest in Europe with an area of 4 km<sup>2</sup>, contains three UNESCO World Heritage Sites: the Alcazar palace complex, the Cathedral and the General Archive of the Indies. The Seville harbour, located about 80 km from the Atlantic Ocean, is the only river port in Spain.

Seville has an area of 140 km<sup>2</sup>, according to the National Topographic Map (Mapa Topografico Nacional) series from the Instituto Geografico Nacional – Centro Nacional de Informacion Geografico, the country's civilian survey organization (pages 984, 985 and 1002). The city is situated in the fertile valley of the Guadalquivir River. The average height above sea level is 7 meters. Most of the city is on the east side of the river, while Triana, La Cartuja and Los Remedios are on the west side. The Aljarafe region lies further west, and is considered part of the metropolitan area. The city has limits on the north with La Rinconada, La Algaba and Santiponce; on the east with Alcala de Guadaira; on the south with Dos Hermanas and Gelves and on the west with San Juan de Aznalfarache, Tomares and Camas.

**5. Zaragoza:** Zaragoza is the capital city of the Zaragoza Province and of the autonomous community of Aragon, Spain. It is situated on the Ebro River and its tributaries, the Huerva and the Gallego, near the centre of the region, in a valley with a variety of landscapes, ranging from desert (Los Monegros) to thick forest, meadows and mountains.

Zaragoza hosted Expo 2008 in the summer of 2008, a world's fair on water and sustainable development. It was also candidate for the European Capital of Culture in 2016. The city is famous for its folklore, a renowned local gastronomy, and landmarks such as the Basilica del Pilar, La Seo Cathedral and the Aljaferia Palace. Together with La Seo and the Aljaferia, several other buildings form part of the Mudejar Architecture of Aragon which is a UNESCO World Heritage Sites. The Fiestas del Pilar are among the most celebrated festivals in Spain.

**6. Malaga:** Malaga is a city and municipality, capital of the Province of Malaga, in the Autonomous community of Andalusia, Spain. It is the second most populous city of Andalusia and the sixth largest in Spain. The southernmost large city in Europe, it lies on

the Coast del Sol (Coast of the Sun) of the Mediterranean, about 100 km (62.14 mile) east of the Strait of Gibraltar and about 130 km (80.78 mi) north of Africa.

The most important business sectors in Malaga are tourism, construction and technology services, but other sectors such as transportation and logistics are beginning to expand.

The Andalusia Technology Park located in Malaga, has enjoyed significant growth since its inauguration in 1992. Malaga is the main economic and financial center of southern Spain, home of the region's largest bank, Unicaja, and the fourth-ranking city in economic activity in Spain behind Madrid, Barcelona and Valencia.

Malaga is located in southern Spain, on the Costa del Sol (Coast of the Sun) on the northern side of the Mediterranean Sea. It lies about 100 km east of the Strait of Gibraltar and about 130 km east of Tarifa (the southernmost point of continental Europe) and about 130 km on north of Africa. Lies on a similar latitude (36°N) as Algiers in Algeria, Tunis in Tunisia, Aleppo in Syria, Mosul in Iraq Tehran in IRAN, Kunduz in Afghanistan and Fresno, California in the United States.

**7. Las Palmas:** Las Palmas is the co-capital (jointly with Santa Cruz) and the most populous city in the Autonomous community of the Canary Islands and the ninth largest city in Spain. Las Palmas is the largest city of the European Union lying outside the European Continent. It is located in the northeast part of the Spanish island of Gran Canaria, about 150 kilometers off the northwestern coast of Africa within the Atlantic Ocean.

Las Palmas enjoys a subtropical climate, with mild to warm temperatures throughout the year. According to a study carried out by Thomas Whitmore, director of research on climatology at Syracuse University in the United States, Las Palmas enjoys "the best climate in the world".

**8. Bilbao:** Bilbao is a municipality and city in Spain, the capital of the Province of Biscay in the Autonomous community of the Basque Country. It is the largest city of its autonomous community and the tenth largest in Spain. Bilbao lies within one of the most populous metropolitan areas in northern Spain. The Bay of Biscay, , where the estuary of Bilbao is formed. Its main urban core is surrounded by two small mountain ranges with an average elevation of 400 metres (1,300 ft).

**9. Murcia:** Murcia a major city in south-eastern Spain, is the capital and most populous city of the Autonomous community of the region of Murcia, and the seventh largest city in the country. It is located on the Segura River, in the Southeast of the Iberian Peninsula, noted by a mild climate with hot summers, mild winters, and relatively low precipitation. The Segura River and its right-hand tributary, the Guadalentín, run through the area.

The city has an elevation of 43 metres (141 ft) above sea level and covers approximately 882 square kilometres (341 sq mi). The city, as the capital of the Comarca Huerta de Murcia is called Europe's orchard due to its long agricultural tradition and as a fruits, vegetables and flowers producer and exporter.

**10. Valladolid:** Valladolid is the capital city of the autonomous region of Castile and Leon and the Province of Valladolid in north-western Spain. It is situated at the confluence of the Pisuerga and Esgueva rivers, and located within three wine growing regions: Ribera Del Duero, Rueda and Cigales. It is the 13th most populous municipality and northwestern Spain's biggest city.

Valladolid was originally settled in pre-Roman times by the Celtic Vaccaeii people, and later the Romans themselves. Valladolid's Old Town preserves a set composed of historic houses, palaces, churches, plazas, avenues and parks, along with a heritage museum which featuational Museum of Sculpture, the Museum of Contemporary Art Patio Herreriano or the Oriental Museum, as well as the museum houses of Jose Zorrilla and Cervantes. Among the events that are held each year in the city include the Holy week in Valladolid, the Valladolid International Film Week (Seminci), or the Theatre Festival and street arts (TAC).

---

## **7.6 TOURISM RESOURCES IN SPAIN:**

---

Mainland Spain is a mountainous country, dominated by high plateaus and mountain chains. After the Pyrenees, the main mountain ranges are the Cordillera Cantabrica, Sistema Iberico, Sistema central, Montes de Toledo, Sierra Morena and the Sistema Penibetico whose highest peak, the 3,478 m high Mulhacen, located in Sierra Nevada, is the highest elevation in the Iberian Peninsula. The highest point in Spain is the Teide, a 3,718-metre (12,198 ft) active volcano in the Canary Islands. The Meseta Central is a vast plateau in the heart of peninsular Spain.

There are several major rivers in Spain such as the Tajo (Tagus), the Ebro, the Duero (Douro), the Guadiana and the Guadalquivir. Alluvial plains are found along the coast, the largest of which is that of the Guadalquivir in Andalusia.

**Royal seat of San Lorenzo de El Escorial:** Royal seat of San Lorenzo de El Escorial construction started in 1559 - located 28 miles northwest of the capital, Madrid, in Spain.**The Teide National Park Ucanca teide on the island of Tenerife is the most visited national park in Spain.**

The Museo Nacional centro de Arte Reina Sofia (MNCARS) is the Spain's national museum of 20th-century art the museum is mainly dedicated to Spanish art. Highlights of the museum include excellent collections of Spain's greatest 20th-century masters,

Pablo Picasso, Salvador Dali, Joan Mira, Juan Gris and Julio Gonzalez. Certainly the most famous masterpiece in the museum is Picasso's painting Guernica.

The Reina Sofía also hosts a free-access library specializing in art, with a collection of over 100,000 books, over 3,500 sound recordings and almost 1,000 videos.

The National Archeological museum of Spain collection includes, among others, Pre-historic, Celtic, Iberian, Greek and Roman antiquities and medieval (Visigothic, Muslim and Christian) objects. Highlights include a replica of the Altamira cave (the first cave in which prehistoric cave paintings were discovered), Lady of Elx (an enigmatic polychrome stone bust), Lady of Baza (a famous example of Iberian sculpture), Biche of Balazote (an Iberian sculpture) and Treasure of Guarrazar (a treasure that represents the best surviving group of Early Medieval Christian votive offerings and the high point of Visigothic goldsmith's work).

The National Museum of Natural Sciences is the National Museum of Natural history of Spain. The research departments of the museum are: Biodiversity and Evolutionary Biology, Evolutionary ecology, Paleobiology, Vulcanology and Geology. The Museum is managed by the Ministry of Defence. The Museum's mission is to acquire, preserve, investigate, report and display for study, education and contemplation, parts, sets and collections of historical, artistic, scientific and technical related to naval activity in order to disseminate the story sea of Spain; to help illustrate, highlight and preserve their traditions and promote national maritime awareness.

**Alhambra Palace, Granada:** World famous **Alhambra Palace** is one of the most visited places in Spain. A must see. "Alhambra" which means "red", takes its name after its red-brown bricked outer walls. Alhambra is situated on a heavenly nature. It rises through the deep straight of Darra River.

**La Sagrada Familia:** La Sagrada Família Church is one of the most spectacular and most visited sights in Barcelona. It is Antoni Gaudi's most important, biggest and world-famous surrealist masterpiece and his largest project.

**Teatro Museo Salvador Dalí (Dalí Theatre Museum)** in Figueras, Costa Brava is a must see. It is the second most visited museum in Spain.

**Guggenheim Museum Bilbao:** *Museo Guggenheim* is the symbol of the Bilbao city. A must see. Once the museum is constructed in 1997, Bilbao city have become an attractive city for the visitors. The museum is gorgeous with its shining titanium roof and futurist architecture and it transformed the Basque city of Bilbao into a modern tourist destination.

---

**7.7 TOP 10 PLACES IN SPAIN:**

---

- 1. Alhambra:** Part fortress, part palace and part garden the Alhambra is situated on a plateau overlooking the city of Granada in southern Spain. The palace was constructed in the 14th century by the Nasrid sultans. The Alhambra is now one of Spain's major tourist attractions and many visitors come to Granada just to see the Alhambra.
- 2. Mezquita of Cordoba:** The Mezquita (Spanish for "Mosque") of Cordoba is a fascinating building famous for the forest of pillars and arches inside the main hall. The site was originally a Roman temple, then a Visigothic church, before the Umayyad Moors built the Mezquita. After the Spanish Reconquista a cathedral was built into the center of the large Moorish building.
- 3. El Escorial:** Nestled in the foothills of the Sierra de Guadarrama, El Escorial was the political center of the Spanish empire under King Philip II. Philip appointed Juan Bautista de Toledo as the architect in 1559 and together they designed El Escorial as a monument to Spain's role as a center of the Christian world. Today it functions as a monastery, royal palace, museum, and school.
- 4. Sagrada Familia:** The Sagrada Familia is a large Roman Catholic church in Barcelona, and one of Spain's most visited tourist attractions. It's a design by Antoni Gaudi, a Catalan architect who worked on this project for almost 40 years until his death in 1926. The construction of the basilica began in 1882 and still as yet not finished.
- 5. Ibiza:** Ibiza is one of the Balearic Islands in the Mediterranean Sea, off the coast of Spain. The island is one of the most popular party destinations in all of Europe. During summer, the island's population doubles as tourists flock to Ibiza to enjoy the night clubs, beach bars and restaurants.
- 6. Cuenca:** Situated between Madrid and Valencia, Cuenca is a marvelous example of a medieval city, built on the steep sides of a mountain. The many "hanging houses" are built right up to the cliff edge, making Cuenca one of the most striking towns in Spain, a gem in the province of Castilla La Mancha.
- 7. Aqueduct of Segovia:** The Aqueduct of Segovia is one of the best-preserved monuments left by the Romans in Spain. The ancient aqueduct carries water 16 km (10 miles) from the Frío River to Segovia and was built of some 24,000 massive granite blocks without the use of mortar. Probably constructed around 50 AD it still provided water to the city in the 20th century.
- 8. La Concha:** Protected from strong winds by steep cliffs and islands, La Concha in San Sebastian is said by many to be one of the best city beaches in Europe, let alone Spain. Here you can go surfing, walk along the promenade in search of good restaurants and enjoy the beautiful views of the beach.

**9. Running of the Bulls:** Pamplona is a city in Navarra, famous for its San Fermín festival held each year from July 6th – 14th. At the heart of the festival is El Encierro, the Running of the Bulls, an activity that involves running in front of a dozen bulls that have been let loose, on a course of the town's streets.

**10. Palacio Real:** The Palacio Real (Royal Palace) of Madrid is the official residence of the King of Spain although it is only used for state ceremonies. The Royal Palace was built between 1738 to 1755 and King Carlos III took up residence in the palace in 1764.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS:**

---

- Write a short note on variety of tourism products in Spain.
- What are the tourist attractions of Spain?
- Make a list of top 10 biggest cities of Spain.
- Indicate the 10 biggest cities in the maps of Spain.
- Indicate the top 10 places to visit in the map of Spain.
- Give the brief religious history of Spain.

---

**7.8 LETS UP SUM UP:**

---

This unit gives ideas about the brief history of Spain. After going through this unit; we understood that which are the important cities, their geographical location, culture, environment, history, economy and government etc. We came to know the major attractions / tourist destination and their different dimensions in the country. This unit gives complete information that makes Spain a most preferred destination all over the world.

This unit ends with the description of top places to visit in Spain, which help to choose a destination as per the interest of the tourists.

---

**7.9 CLUES TO ANSWERS:**

---

- Refer Sec. 7.4
- Refer Sec. 7.7
- Refer Sec. 7.5
- Refer Sec. 7.5
- Refer Sec. 7.7
- Refer Sec. 7.3

---

**REFERENCES:**

---

- Spain International Monetary Fund. Retrieved 18 April 2013.

- Burke, Ulick Ralph (2nd edition, 2008). *A History of Spain from the earliest Times to the Death of Ferdinand the Catholic*, Volume 1. London: Longmans, Green & Co. p. 14. ISBN 978-1-4437-4054-8.
- Rinehart, Robert; Seeley, Jo Ann Browning (1998). *A Country Study: Spain-Hispania*. Library of Congress Country Series. Retrieved 9 August 2008.
- Payne, Stanley G. (1973). *A history of Spain and Portugal*; Ch.1 Ancient Hispania. The Library of Iberian Resources Online. Retrieved 9 August 2008.
- Rinehart, Robert; Seeley, Jo Ann Browning (1998). *A Country study: Spain: Castile and Aragon*". Library of Congress Country Series. Retrieved 9 August 2008.
- Thomas, Hugh (2003). *Rivers of gold: the rise of the Spanish Empire*. London: George Weidenfeld & Nicholson. pp. *passim*. ISBN 978-0-297-64563-4.
- "Spain's economy: Closing the Gap". OECD Observer. May 2005. Retrieved 15 August 2008.
- CIA-The World fact book-Spain. Cia.gov. Retrieved 30 April 2011.
- Richardson, Paul (19 August 2007). "Spain's perfect paella: *The Times* (London: Times Newspapers). Retrieved 6 August 2010.

**Unit-8****The United Kingdom- History, Biggest Cities, Different  
Tourism Resources and Top Tourist Places**

---

**Structure:****8.1 Objectives****8.2 Introduction****8.3 History of UK****8.4 Variety of Tourism Products in UK****8.5 UK's Ten Biggest Cities****8.6 Tourism Resources in UK****8.7 Top Ten Places in UK****8.8 Lets up Sum Up****8.9 Clues to Answers**

---

**8.1 OBJECTIVES:**

---

The aim of this unit is to provide information of UK, Tourism point of view. This unit will guide to the student about the Geographical location and all Tourism aspects of UK, who attract not only the domestic tourists but also the foreign tourists in terms of tourism receipts and tourist arrivals. After going through Unit 8 on UK, You will understand the following:

- Geographical location of the country
- Historical richness of the Country
- Importance of Culture in development of Tourism
- Characteristics of Tourism industry in UK
- Natural attractions in the Country
- Important tourist cities in the Country
- Top tourist attractions of the Country

---

**8.2 INTRODUCTION:**

---

Units 8 makes an effort to gives the idea to the students about the UK as a tourist destination and help them to understand the various dimensions of the Tourism attractions of the country. This unit attempts to through the light on the important cities, Geographical aspects, Attractions (Natural and Man-made), culture and its all aspects, environment, history, economy, government etc. in UK.

Some interesting facts about UK:

- **Name:** United Kingdom
- **Moto:** Dieu et mon droit (French)- God and my Right).
- **Population:** 63,181,775 (Census, 2011)
- **Capital:** London
- **Language:** English
- **Religion:** Mostly Christians with 59%
- **Government:** Unitary parliamentary constitutional monarchy
- **Currency:** Pound sterling

---

**8.3 HISTORY OF UK:**

---

The name "United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland" was adopted in 1927 by the Royal and parliamentary Titles Act. It reflected the reality of the independence of the Irish Free State, and the partitioning of Ireland in 1922, which left Northern Ireland as the only part of the island of Ireland still within the United Kingdom (UK).

The United Kingdom is the world's 7<sup>th</sup> biggest tourist destination, with 29.2 million visiting in 2011. US\$17.2 billion was spent in the UK by foreign tourists. Visit Britain data shows that the US remains the most-valuable inbound market, with American visitors spending £2.1bn in 2010. Nevertheless, the number of travellers originating from Europe is larger than those travelling from North America - 21.5 million compared to 3.5 million American / Canadian visitors.

The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, commonly known as the United Kingdom (UK) and Britain, is a Sovereign state located off the north-western coast of continental Europe.

The country includes the island of Great Britain, the north-eastern part of the island of Ireland and many smaller islands. Northern Ireland is the only part of the UK that shares a land border with another state – the Republic of Ireland. Apart from this land border, the UK is surrounded by the Atlantic Ocean in the west and north, the North Sea in the east, the English Channel in the south and the Irish Sea in the west.

The United Kingdom is the world's 7<sup>th</sup> biggest tourist destination, with 29.2 million visiting in 2011. US\$17.2 billion was spent in the UK by foreign tourists. Visit Britain data shows that the US remains the most-valuable inbound market, with American visitors spending £2.1bn in 2010. Nevertheless, the number of travellers originating from Europe is larger than those travelling from North America - 21.5 million compared to 3.5 million American / Canadian visitors.

The UK is a developed country and has the world's sixth-largest economy by nominal GDP and eighth-largest economy by purchasing power parity. It was the world's first industrialized country and the world's foremost power during the 19<sup>th</sup> and early 20<sup>th</sup> centuries. The UK is still referred to as a great power and retains considerable economic, cultural, military, scientific and political influence internationally. It is a recognized nuclear weapons state and its military expenditure ranks fourth in the world.

The UK has been a permanent member of the United Nations Security Council since its first session in 1946. It has been a member of the European Union and its predecessor the European Economic Community since 1973; it is also a member of the Commonwealth of Nations, the Council of Europe, the G7, the G8, the G20, NATO, the Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) and the World Trade Organization.

Although the United Kingdom, as a sovereign state, is a country, England, Scotland, Wales and (more controversially) Northern Ireland are also regarded as 'countries', though not sovereign states. Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland have devolved self-government.

The British Prime Minister's website has used the phrase "countries within a country" to describe the United Kingdom. With regard to Northern Ireland, the descriptive name

used "can be controversial, with the choice often revealing one's political preferences." Terms used for Northern Ireland include "region" and "province".

It lies between the North Atlantic Ocean and the North Sea with the south-east coast coming within 35 kilometers (22 mi) of the coast of northern France, from which it is separated by the English Channel.

The United Kingdom has a mild and temperate climate which is influenced by the North Atlantic Drift and the southwesterly winds. Rainfall is fairly evenly distributed throughout the year with March to June the driest period and September to January the wettest. Average annual precipitation varies from 1,600 mm (63 inches) in the mountainous areas of the north and west to less than 800 mm (32 inches) over central and eastern areas.

Average temperature ranges in London are from 2 to 6 degrees Celsius (36 to 43 degrees Fahrenheit) in January to 13 to 22 degrees Celsius (55 to 72 degrees Fahrenheit) in July.

The United Kingdom has sovereignty over seventeen territories which do not form part of the United Kingdom itself: fourteen British Overseas Territories and three Crown Dependencies.

The fourteen British Overseas Territories are: Anguilla; Bermuda; the British Antarctic territory; the British Indian ocean territory; the British Virgin Islands; the Cayman Islands; the Falkland Islands; Gibraltar; Montserrat; Saint Helena, Ascension and Tristan da Cunha the Turks and Caicos Islands; the Pitcairn Islands; South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands; and the Sovereign Base areas on Cyprus

The culture of the United Kingdom has been influenced by many factors including: the nation's island status; its history as a western liberal democracy and a major power; as well as being a political union of four countries with each preserving elements of distinctive traditions, customs and symbolism. As a result of the British Empire, British influence can be observed in the language, culture and legal system of many of its former colonies; including Australia, Canada, India, Ireland, New Zealand, South Africa and the United States. The substantial cultural influence of the United Kingdom has led it to be described as a "cultural superpower."

---

#### **8.4 VARIETY OF TOURISM PRODUCTS:**

---

- **Beach tourism** - on the rare occasions that the UK is hot our beach resorts kick into action - from Black pool in the North West to New quay in the South
- **Mountain and hill tourism** - the north of England, North Wales and Scotland offer fantastic mountain scenery from our glacial past - the Lake District national park benefits from this.

- **City Breaks** - huge cities such as Newcastle and London offer a huge variety of activities, and most museums are free. London alone boasts the Imperial war museum, the National Portrait Gallery, the London Eye (the UK's most visited attraction with 3.7 million revolving visitors each year).
- **Activity tourism** - the UK offers a range of adventurous activities such as GoApe, white water rafting, rock climbing and pot holing.
- **Cultural Tourism** - the UK offers lots of architectural delights, museums, history and world renowned sites (e.g. Stone Henge).
- **Ecological tourism** - The UK has a range of protected environments, including SSSIs (sites of Special Scientific Interest) and National Parks. These have an emphasis on sustainability and conservation but are under pressure from visitor numbers.

All of these have contributed to the UK being a highly visited country. In the past nearly all UK tourism was domestic - the wealthy of the UK holidaying in the UK. During the 1950s to early 1970s the booming UK economy allowed companies to give their employees more time off and the employees had more disposable income to spend. However, a lot of our coastal resorts are now in decline, as wealthy people prefer to holiday abroad.

The UK is the sixth most visited country in the World and received \$30 billion of international tourist wealth in 2009. Including domestic tourism, tourism was worth £115.4 billion to the UK economy once the direct and indirect impacts were taken into account. Indeed, million people in the UK earn their money from tourism.

---

### **8.5 UK'S TEN BIGGEST CITIES:**

---

**1. London:** London is the capital city of England and the United Kingdom, and the largest city, urban zones and metropolitan area in the United Kingdom, and the European Union by most measures.

Located on the river Thames, London has been a major settlement for two millennia, its history going back to its founding by the Romans who named it Londinium. London's ancient core, the City of London, largely retains its square-mile mediaeval boundaries. Since at least the 19th century, the name London has also referred to the metropolis developed around this core. The bulk of this conurbation forms the London region and the Greater London administrative area, governed by the elected Mayor of London and the London Assembly.

London is a leading global city , with strengths in the arts, commerce, education, entertainment, fashion, finance, healthcare, media, professional services, research and development, tourism and transport all contributing to its prominence. It is one of the

world's leading financial centres and has the fifth largest metropolitan area GDP in the world depending on measurement. London has been described as a world cultural capital. It is the world's most-visited city as measured by international arrivals and has the world's largest city airport system measured by passenger traffic. London's 43 universities form the largest concentration of higher education in Europe. In 2012, London became the first city to host the modern Summer Olympic Games three times.

**2. Birmingham:** Birmingham a city in the West Midland of England. It is the most populous British city outside the capital London with 1,074,300 residents (2011 census), an increase of 96,000 over the previous decade.

The city lies at the heart of the West midlands the second most populous urban area. Today Birmingham is a major international commercial centre, ranked as a beta-world city by the Globalization and World Cities Research Network; and an important transport, retail, events and conference hub. With a GDP of \$90bn, the economy of the urban area is the second largest in the UK and the 72nd largest in the world.

Birmingham is located in the centre of the West midlands region of England on the Birmingham plateau- an area of relatively high ground, ranging around 500 to 1,000 feet (150-300 m) above sea level and crossed by Britain's main north-south watershed between the basins of the Rivers Severn and Trent. To the south west of the city lie the Lickey Hills, Clent Hills and Walton Hills, which reach 1,033 feet (315 m) and have extensive views over the city. Other than its canals, Birmingham is only served by minor rivers and brooks, such as the River Cole, and the River Rea.

**3. Sheffield:** Sheffield is a city and in South Yorkshire, England. Its name derives from the River Sheaf which runs through the city. Historically a part of the West Riding of Yorkshire and with some of its southern suburbs annexed from Derbyshire, the city has grown from its largely industrial roots to encompass a wider economic base.

It is one of the eight largest regional English cities that make up the Core cities group. Sheffield is the third largest English district by population.

The city is located within the valleys of the River Don and its four tributaries, the Loxley, Porter Brooke, the Rivelin, and the Sheaf .61% of Sheffield's entire area is green space, and a third of the city lies within the Peak district national park.

There are more than 200 parks, woodlands and gardens in the city, and an estimated 2.5 million trees, giving Sheffield the highest ratio of trees to people of any city in Europe.

**4. Bristol:** Bristol is a City, in South West England. It is England's sixth and the United Kingdom's eighth most populous city, one of the Core cities group and the most populous city in South West England. People from Bristol are termed Bristolians. The city is built

around the River Avon, and it also has a short coastline on the Severn Estuary, which flows into the Bristol channels.

Bristol is the largest centre of culture, employment and education in the region. Its prosperity has been linked with the sea since its earliest days.

The commercial Port of Bristol was originally in the city centre before being moved to the Severn Estuary at Avon mouth ; Royal Port bury Dock is on the western edge of the city boundary. In more recent years the economy has depended on the creative media, electronics and aerospace industries, and the city centre docks have been regenerated as a centre of heritage and culture.

**5. Manchester:** Manchester is a city in North West England. It lies within the United Kingdom's 3<sup>rd</sup> largest urban area. People from Manchester are known as Mancunians and the local authority is Manchester City Council.

The recorded history of Manchester began with the civilian settlement associated with the Roman fort of Mamucium, which was established in 79 AD on a sandstone bluff near the confluence of the rivers Medlock and Irwell .The city is notable for its architecture, culture, media links, scientific and engineering output, social impact and shopping connections.

**6. Leeds:** Leeds is the cultural, financial and commercial heart of the West Yorkshire urban area and it is the fourth-largest metropolitan area in the UK. In addition, the Leeds city region, an economic area with Leeds at its core.

Leeds is the UK's largest centre for business, legal, and financial services outside London, and its office market is considered the best in Europe for value. Leeds is considered a Gamma world city, alongside cities such as Phoenix.

**7. Leicester:** Leicester is a city in the East Midlands of England, and the country town of Leicestershire. The city lies on the River Soar and at the edge of the National Forest.

It is the tenth largest city in the United Kingdom and the UK's fourteenth largest urban area. It is the largest city in the East Midlands with a population of 330,000 and second largest in the Midlands behind its much larger neighbor Birmingham. It has the second largest urban area in the East Midlands region.

Leicestershire is a major commercial and manufacturing centre. Its economy is the largest in the East Midlands, accounting for almost a quarter of the region's GDP (£11billion) and providing jobs for 437,000 people.

Today, Leicester is located on the midland main line and close to the M1 motorway. The city has the highest ethnic minority population in the United Kingdom in terms of its size, particularly of South Asian origin, a product of immigration to the United Kingdom since

the Second World War. To cater for the South Asian community, there are many Muslim, Hindu, Sikh and other places of worship and the Melton Road district serves as a focus, containing a large number of Asian restaurants and other small businesses.

**8. Glasgow:** Glasgow is the largest city in Scotland. It is situated on the River Clyde in the country's West Central Lowlands. It grew from a small rural settlement on the River Clyde to become one of the largest seaports in the world. Expanding from the medieval bishopric and royal burgh, and the later establishment of the University of Glasgow in the 15th century, it became a major centre of the Scottish Enlightenment in the 18th century. From the 18th century the city also grew as one of Great Britain's main hubs of transatlantic trade with North America the West Indies.

With the onset of the Industrial revolution, the population and economy of Glasgow and the surrounding region expanded rapidly to become one of the world's pre-eminent centres of chemicals, textiles and engineering; most notably in the shipbuilding and marine engineering industry, which produced many innovative and famous vessels. Glasgow is known as the "*Second City of the British Empire*" for much of the Victorian era and Edwardian period.

Today it is one of Europe's top ten financial centres and is home to many of Scotland's leading businesses. Glasgow is also ranked as the 57th most livable city in the world. The entire region surrounding the conurbation covers approximately 2.3 million people, 41% of Scotland's population.

Glasgow will host the 2014 Commonwealth games and is currently a candidate city to host the 2018 summer youth Olympics. The present site of Glasgow has been used since prehistoric times for settlement due to it being the furthest downstream fording point of the River Clyde, at the point of its confluence with the Molendinar Burn.

**9. Liverpool:** Liverpool is a city and metropolitan borough of Merseyside, England, United Kingdom along the eastern side of the Mersey Estuary. It is the fourth most populous British city, and third most populous in England. Historically, Liverpool was a part of Lancashire. The city's urbanization and expansion were largely brought about by the city's status as a major port.

Liverpool's status as a Port city has contributed to their diverse populations, which, historically, were drawn from a wide range of peoples, cultures, and religions, particularly those from Ireland. The city is also home to the oldest Black African community in the country and the oldest Chinese communities in Europe. Liverpool is noted for its rich architectural heritage and is home to many buildings regarded as amongst the greatest examples of their respective styles in the world. Several areas of the city centre were granted World heritage site status by UNESCO in 2004. Referred to as the Liverpool maritime mercantile city, the site comprises six separate locations in the city

including the Pier head, Albert Dock and William Brown Street and includes many of the city's most famous landmarks.

Liverpool is also well known for its strong sporting identity. The city is home of two Premier League football clubs, Liverpool F.C and Everton F.C. Matches between the two clubs are known as the Merseyside derby.

**10. Newcastle:** Newcastle is situated in the North East of England, in the ceremonial county of Tyne and Wear and the historical and traditional county of Northumberland.

The city is located on the northern bank of the River Tyne at a latitude of 54.974° N and a longitude of 1.614° W. The ground beneath the city is formed from Carboniferous strata of the Middle Pennine Coal Measures Group—a suite coal seams of sandstones, mudstones and which generally dip moderately eastwards. To the west of the city are the Upper Pennine Coal Measures and further west again the sandstones and mudstones of the Stain more Formation, the local equivalent of the Millstone Grit.

In large parts, Newcastle still retains all mediaeval street layouts. Narrow alleys or 'chares', most of which can only be traversed by foot, still exist in abundance, particularly around the riverside.

---

## **8.6 TOURISM RESOURCES IN UK:**

---

---

### **Pleasure Beach in Blackpoll:**

---

Pleasure Beach in Blackpoll is the UK's top theme park attracting over 5 million visitors a year. Entrance to the park is free although in 2009 there will be a charge. Once inside the park you can purchase a wristband for unlimited access to over 125 rides. In 2007 Pleasure Beach was ranked the 14th most popular theme park in the world with its combination of thrill rides, roller coasters, water rides, amusements and shows. There is something for everyone from the fast thrillers like Pepsi Max Big One and Revolution to the family orientated Alice ride or Lunar carousel

One of the most famous rides at 235ft is "The Big One", Europe's tallest roller coaster. The latest coaster addition is Infusion, a suspended coaster that takes you through five incredible loops plus a double line twist.

There are height restrictions on the bigger rides but there are plenty of rides and amusement for small children so they won't feel left out. Specially designed for small children is Nickelodeon land, with lots of characters they will recognize from the Nickelodeon Network. Climb to the top of the 158-metre-high Blackpoll tower to get stunning views as far away as North Wales. There is no shortage of places to eat and drink with over 35 restaurants and cafes, as well as a pub and a hotel.

---

**EDF Energy, London Eye:**

---

The London Eye was formally opened by the then Prime Minister, Tony Blair, on 31 December 1999, although it was not opened to the public until 9 March 2000 because of technical problems. Since its opening, the Eye has become a major landmark and tourist attraction and one of the iconic sights of London. From January 2011, its official name was changed to the EDF Energy London Eye. At 135m high The London Eye is the tallest Ferris wheel in Europe and travels gently at a speed of 26cm per second. Each rotation takes 30 minutes in which time you can marvel at the views that span (on a clear day) up to 40km in all directions. This is the UK's most popular paid for visitor attraction, visited by over 3.5 million people a year.

---

**Buckingham Palace:**

---

Buckingham Palace is the Queen's official London residence and is used to receive and entertain guests on state, ceremonial and official occasions for the Royal Family. The palace was originally built in 1705 for the Duke of Buckingham. The Palace is located between the Green Park, Hyde Park and St. James's Park. State Rooms, Ballroom & Gardens Buckingham Palace's 19 state rooms, ballroom and gardens are open to visitors during August and September while the Queen makes her annual visit to Balmorals.

The state room houses some of the Royal family's greatest treasures including paintings and the finest French and English furniture. Visit the spectacular Palace Ballroom and tour the Palace gardens with views of the west front of the Palace and the lake.

There is an entry fee and tickets are limited so you should book ahead if possible. The Changing the Guard ceremony takes place in the forecourt of Buckingham Palace at 11.30 every day in summer, every other day in winter.

The New Guard marches to the Palace from Wellington Barracks with a Guards band, the Old Guard hands over in a ceremony during which the sentries are changed and then returns to barracks. The ceremony lasts about 45 minutes and is free to watch. The Queen's Gallery is a permanent space dedicated to exhibitions of items from the Royal Collection, the wide-ranging collection of art and treasures held in trust by The Queen for the Nation.

---

**Tower of London, London**

---

The Tower of London is one of London's most popular and iconic tourist attractions. Built by William the Conqueror in the early 1080s the Tower's role has been as a fortress, palace and prison. One of the main reasons to visit the Tower is to see the working collection of Crown Jewels. There are 23,578 gems in the collection including one of the world's most

famous diamonds; the Koh-i-Noor. Find out who dared to try and steal the Jewels in 1671 and whether they succeeded.

Many people lost their heads in the Tower and the Prisoners exhibition looks at some of the Towers more infamous inmates including Anne Boleyn, Edward V, Guy Fawkes and Sir Thomas More. The Tower's history as a prison continued during the two world wars and still held executions. There is so much to see at the Tower including the 'Yeomen of the Guard', the Ravens, Henry VIII's armour, instruments of torture in Lower Wakefield Tower and the Traitors Gate. Exotic animals were given as royal gifts and animals were kept at the Royal Menagerie for the entertainment and curiosity of the court. Everything from elephants to tigers, kangaroos, polar bears, and elephants and ostriches lived in what was known as the Royal Menagerie. *Woburn Abbey & Safari Park, Bedfordshire*

The stories of many of the animals kept at the Tower is told through interactive displays, and tells how the animals would have lived, what they smelt like and learn what happened when they escaped. Windsor castle is the largest and oldest occupied castle in the world and is one of the official residences of the Queen. It was originally built by William the Conqueror in the 11th Century and has seen many extensions and fortifications by English monarchs over the years. *Lincoln Cathedral, Lincoln*

---

**6.7 TOP 10 PLACES OF UK:**

---

**1. London:** Cosmopolitan, fast moving London is one of the world's most exciting and successful capital cities. It's a dynamic place where old meets new, with hundreds of famous landmarks and institutions. There's still space to relax in London's many parks, and an endless variety of shops, cafes and restaurants to choose from.

**2. Eastern England:** Eastern England is renowned for its pastoral landscapes and well-preserved medieval towns. Artist John Constable immortalised the Suffolk countryside in his painting "The Haywain." Pretty seaside villages with beaches of sand or shingle line the coast.

**3. Midland England:** Centuries old traditions and the social fabric of rural life continue to flourish in the villages and small country towns of the Midlands. In contrast, the region was birthplace of the Industrial Revolution in the early 18th century. Fans of Shakespeare from around the globe are drawn to Stratford upon Avon, birthplace of this great writer.

**4. North East England:** North East England's heritage includes the early Christian settlement of Holy Island, and the Industrial might of the shipyards of Newcastle, now a bustling modern city. Visit the remains of Hadrian's Wall, built by the Romans 2000 years ago, or the coastal town of Whit by, birthplace of Captain James Cook who discovered Australia.

**5. North West England:** North West England is a varied region. Manchester and Liverpool are famous for music, football and their industrial heritage.

The Pennine Moors and mountainous Lake District are a haven for lovers of the outdoors and fans of writers such as Wordsworth and Beatrix Potter. The Isle of Man, home of the TT motorcycle races, is just short ferry trip away

**6. Northern Ireland:** Northern Ireland is one of the constituent countries of the United Kingdom. The six counties that form Northern Ireland are - County Antrim, County Armagh, County Londonderry, County Down, County Fermanagh, and County Tyrone. Belfast is the capital and the largest city of Northern Ireland. Northern Ireland has a varied landscape of fields, hills and glens, a coastline with excellent beaches and the famous Giant's Causeway.

In Belfast, the Harland and Wolf shipyards that built the Titanic are still operational today. The stately Mount Stewart House and Gardens and the Crown Bar in Belfast both provide insights into the history of the region

**7. Scotland:** Located in the North-western Europe, Scotland is divided into - Borders, South West, North East Scotland, Central Belt, North East Scotland, Hebrides, Highlands, Orkney Islands, and Shetland Islands. Edinburgh is the capital city of Scotland and Glasgow is the largest city in the country. The stunning mountains and lochs of Scotland offer the closest thing to a real wilderness in the UK. Hebridean Islands and the outposts of Orkney and Shetland have their own distinct cultures and traditions, whilst city lovers will enjoy the cosmopolitan but distinctly Scottish atmospheres of Edinburgh and Glasgow.

**8. South East England:** The counties of South East England are the most prosperous in the UK, and serve as a gateway to Europe via sea ports and the channel tunnel. The county of Kent is known as "the garden of England." There are many stately homes and historic houses to visit, such as Chartwell, former home of Britain's great wartime leader, Winston Churchill.

**9. South West England:** South West England has long been associated with the sea and maritime history. Tales of smugglers and pirates abound in the counties of Devon and Cornwall. The golden sandy beaches and secluded coves make for perfect seaside holidays. Visit the wild hills of Bodmin or Exmoor further inland, and the elegant city of Bath.

**10. Wales:** Wales lies in the mountainous western peninsula of the Island of Great Britain. Wales is bound by England to the east and the Irish Sea to the west. The country is divided into three regions - North Wales, Mid Wales, and South Wales. Cardiff is the capital and the largest city of Wales. Lush green wooded valleys, mountains, lakes, waterfalls, and a long coastline make Wales a favourite destination for holiday makers and outdoor

enthusiasts. Medieval castles dominate towns such as Caernarfon and Conwy, whilst Cardiff, the capital, has been re-born as a forward-looking European city.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS:**

---

- Write a short note on variety of tourism products in UK
- What are the tourist attractions of UK?
- Make a list of top 10 biggest cities of UK.
- Indicate the 10 biggest cities in the maps of UK.
- Indicate the top 10 places to visit in the map of UK.
- Give a brief history of UK.

---

**8.8 LETS UP SUM UP:**

---

This unit gives ideas about the brief history of United Kingdom. After going through this unit, we have understood that which are the important cities, their geographical location, culture, environment, history, economy and government etc. We came to know the major attractions / tourist destination and their different dimensions in the country. This unit gives complete information that makes United Kingdom, a most preferred destination all over the world.

This unit ends with the description of top places to visit in United Kingdom which help to choose a destination as per the interest of the tourists.

---

**8.9 CLUES TO ANSWERS:**

---

1. Refer Sec. 8.4
2. Refer Sec. 8.7
3. Refer Sec. 8.5
4. Refer Sec. 8.5
5. Refer Sec. 8.7
6. Refer Sec. 8.3

---

**REFERENCES:**

---

- "BBC Style guide (Great Britain)" *BBC News*. 19 August 2002. Retrieved 23 August 2011.

- Canny, Nicholas (1998). *The origins of Empire, The Oxford History of the British Empire Volume I*. Oxford University Press. ISBN 0-19-924676-9. Retrieved 1 May 2011.
- "English Language-Government, citizens and rights". Directgov. Retrieved 23 August 2011
- "European Countries -United Kingdom". *Europa (web portal)*. Retrieved 15 December 2010.
- "Geography of Northern Ireland". University of Ulster. Retrieved 22 May 2006.
- <http://www.tourist-information-uk.com/london-eye.htm#ixzz2RYHz5oma>
- Profile Wales, *BBC News*. 9 June 2010. Retrieved 7 November 2010.
- UK Census, 2011 Office for National Statistics. Retrieved 17 December 2012.
- BBC. 24 January 2013. Retrieved 9 April 2013.
- United Kingdom. *The World Fact book* . Central Intelligence Agency. Retrieved 23 September 2008.

**Unit-9****The China Republic and Hong Kong-History, Variety of  
Tourism Products, Biggest Cities, Top Tourist Places.**

---

**Structure:**

**9.1 Objectives**

**9.2 Introduction**

**9.3 History of China and Hong Kong**

**9.4 Variety of Tourism Products in China and Hong Kong**

**9.5 Ten Biggest Cities of China and Hong Kong**

**9.6 Tourism Resources in China and Hong Kong**

**9.7 Top Ten Places in China and Hong Kong**

**9.7.1 Top 10 Places of China**

**9.7.2 Top 10 Places of Hong Kong**

**9.8 Lets up Sum Up**

**9.9 Clues to Answers**

---

**9.1 OBJECTIVES:**

---

The aim of this unit is to provide information of China and Hong Kong, Tourism point of view. This unit will guide to the student about the Geographical location and all Tourism aspects of China and Hong Kong, who attract not only the domestic tourists but also the foreign tourists in terms of tourism receipts and tourist arrivals. After going through Unit 10 on China and Hong Kong, You will understand the following:

- Geographical location of the country
- Historical richness of the Country
- Importance of Culture in development of Tourism
- Characteristics of Tourism industry in China and Hong Kong
- Natural attractions in the Country
- Important tourist cities in the Country
- Top tourist attractions of the Country

---

**9.2 INTRODUCTION:**

---

Unit 10, makes an effort to gives the idea to the students about the china and Hong Kong as a tourist destination and help them to understand the various dimensions of the Tourism attractions of the country. This unit attempts to through the light on the important cities, Geographical aspects, Attractions (Natural and Man-made), culture and its all aspects, environment, history, economy, government etc. in China and Hong Kong. Some interesting facts about China and Hong Kong:

<b>China</b>	<b>Hong Kong</b>
<b>Name:</b> People's Republic of China	<b>Name:</b> Hong Kong Special Administrative Region of the People's Republic of China
<b>Population:</b> 1,353,821,000 (estimate 2012)	<b>Population:</b> 7,061,200 (census 2011)
<b>Capital:</b> Beijing	<b>Capital:</b> Hong Kong
<b>Language:</b> Chinese	<b>Language:</b> Cantonese Chinese
<b>Religion:</b>	<b>Religion:</b>
<b>Government:</b> People's Republic of China	<b>Government:</b> Special Administrative Region of the People's Republic of China
<b>Currency:</b> Renminbi (yuan) (¥) (CNY)	<b>Currency:</b> Hong Kong dollar (HKD)

---

**9.3 HISTORY OF CHINA:**

---

The ancient Chinese civilization – one of the world's earliest – flourished in the fertile basin of the Yellow River in the North China Plain. For millennia, China's political system was based on hereditary monarchies, known as dynasties, beginning with the semi-mythological Xia of the Yellow River basin (c. 2000 BC). Since 221 BC, when the Qin Dynasty first conquered several states to form a Chinese empire, the country has expanded, fractured and been reformed numerous times. The Republic of China overthrew the last dynasty in 1911, and ruled the Chinese mainland until 1949. After the defeat of the Empire of Japan in World War II, the Communist Party defeated the nationalist Kuomintang in mainland China and established the People's Republic of China in Beijing on 1 October 1949, while the Kuomintang relocated the ROC government to Taipei. The ROC's jurisdiction is now limited to Taiwan and several outlying islands, including Penghu, Kinmen and Matsu, and it has received limited diplomatic recognition

China is a sovereign state located in East Asia. It is the world's most populous country, with a population of over 1.35 billion. The PRC is a single –party state governed by the Community Party, with its seat of government in the capital city of Beijing. It exercises jurisdiction over 22 provinces, five autonomous regions, four direct –controlled municipalities (Beijing, Tianjin, Shanghai, and Chongqing), and two mostly self-governing special administrative regions (Hong Kong and Macau). The PRC also claims Taiwan – which is controlled by the Republic of China (ROC), a separate political entity – as its 23<sup>rd</sup> province, a claim controversial due to the complex political status of Taiwan and the unresolved Chinese Civil War.

Covering approximately 9.6 million square kilometres, China is the world's second-largest country by land area, and the third or fourth –largest by total area, depending on the definition of total area.

China's landscape is vast and diverse, with forest steppes and the Gobi and Taklamakan deserts occupying the arid north and northwest near Mongolia and Central Asia, and subtropical forests prevalent in the wetter south near Southeast Asia. The terrain of western China is rugged and elevated, with the Himalaya, Karakoram, Pamir and Tian Shan mountain ranges separating China from South and Central Asia.

The Yangtze and Yellow rivers, the third-and sixth-longest in the world, have their sources in the Tibetan Plateau and continue to the densely populated eastern seaboard. China's coastline along the Pacific Ocean is 14,500 kilometres (9,000 mi) long and is bounded by the Bohai, Yellow, East and South China Seas.

Since the introduction of economic reforms in 1978, China has become the world's fastest-growing major economy.

As of 2013, it is the world's second-largest economy by both nominal total GDP and purchasing power parity (PPP), and is also the world's largest exporter and importer of goods.

The People's Republic of China is the second-largest country in the world by land area after Russia and is either the third or fourth largest by total area, after Russia, Canada and, depending on the definition of total area, the United States.

China has the longest combined land border in the world, measuring 22,117 km (13,743 mi) from the mouth of the Yalu river to the Gulf of Tonkin. China borders 14 nations, more than any other country except Russia, which also borders 14. China extends across much of East Asia, bordering Vietnam, Laos, and Burma in Southeast Asia; India, Bhutan, Nepal and Pakistan in South Asia; Afghanistan, Tajikistan, Kyrgyzstan and Kazakhstan in Central Asia; a small section of Russian Altai and Mongolia in Inner Asia; and the Russian Far East and North Korea in Northeast Asia. China's border with India is disputed, and was a key cause of the 1962 Sino-Indian War.

Additionally, China shares maritime boundaries with South Korea, Japan, Vietnam, the Philippines and Taiwan. The PRC and the Republic of China (Taiwan) make mutual claims over each other's territory and the frontier between areas under their respective control is closest near the islands of Kinmen and Matsu, off the Fujian coast, but otherwise run through the Taiwan Strait. The PRC and ROC assert identical claims over the entirety of the Spratly Islands in the South China Sea, and the southernmost extent of these claims reaches James Shoal, which would form a maritime frontier with Malaysia.

As of 2013, China has the world's second largest economy in terms of nominal GDP, totaling approximately US\$8.250 trillion according to the international Monetary Fund (IMF) However, China's 2012 nominal GDP per capita of US\$6,094 puts it behind around ninety countries (out of 183 countries on the IMF list) in global GDP per capita rankings. If PPP is taken into account in total GDP figures, China is again second only to the United States – in 2012, its PPP GDP reached \$12.382 trillion, corresponding to \$9,146 per capita.

Hong Kong became a colony of the British Empire after the First Opium War (1839–42). Originally confined to Hong Kong Island, the colony's boundaries were extended in stages to the Kowloon Peninsula in 1860 and then the New Territories in 1898. It was occupied by Japan during the Pacific War, after which the British resumed control until 1997, when China resumed sovereignty.

The region espoused minimum government intervention under the ethos of positive non-interventionism during the colonial era. The time period greatly influenced the current culture of Hong Kong, often described as "East meets west", and the educational system, which used to loosely follow the system in England until reforms implemented in 2009.

Hong Kong is a special administrative region of the People's Republic of China. It is situated on China's south coast and, enclosed by the Pearl River Delta and South China Sea; it is known for its expansive skyline and deep natural harbour. With a land mass of 1,104 km<sup>2</sup> (426 sq mi) and a population of seven million people, Hong Kong is one of the most densely populated areas in the world.

Hong Kong's population is 95 percent ethnic Chinese and 5 percent from other groups. Hong Kong's Han Chinese majority originate mainly from the cities of Guangzhou and Taishan in the neighboring Guangdong province.

As one of the world's leading international financial centres, Hong Kong has a major capitalist service economy characterized by low taxation and free trade, and the currency, Hong Kong dollar, is the eighth most traded currency in the world.

Hong Kong is located on China's south coast, 60 km (37 mi) east of Macau on the opposite side of the Pearl River Delta. It is surrounded by the South China Sea on the east, south, and west, and borders the Guangdong city of Shenzhen to the north over the Shenzhen River. The territory's 1,104 km<sup>2</sup> (426 sq mi) area consists of Hong Kong Island, the Kowloon Peninsula, the New Territories, and over 200 offshore islands, of which the largest is Lantau Island. Of the total area, 1,054 km<sup>2</sup> (407 sq mi) is land and 50 km<sup>2</sup> (19 sq mi) is inland water. Hong Kong claims territorial waters to a distance of 3 nautical miles (5.6 km). Its land area makes Hong Kong the 179<sup>th</sup> largest inhabited territory in the world.

As much of Hong Kong's terrain is hilly to mountainous with steep slopes, less than 25% of the territory's landmass is developed, and about 40% of the remaining land area is reserved as country parks and nature reserves.

Most of the territory's urban development exists on Kowloon peninsula, along the northern edge of Hong Kong Island, and in scattered settlements throughout the New Territories. The highest elevation in the territory is at Tai Mo Shan, 957 metres (3,140 ft) above sea level. Hong Kong's long and irregular coast provides it with many bays, rivers and beaches. On 18 September 2011, UNESCO listed the Hong Kong National Geopark as part of its Global Geoparks Network. Hong Kong Geopark is made up of eight Geo-Areas distributed across the Sai Kung Volcanic Rock Region and Northeast New Territories Sedimentary Rock Region.

---

#### **9.4 VARIETY OF TOURISM PRODUCTS:**

---

Rich in cultural relics and natural resources, Wanna travel through China to appreciate its most popular landscapes, to discover its inner spirit in one time. From inner land to coastal city, from royal Beijing to bustling HK, from cultural Xian, Tibet to picturesque

Hangzhou, Suzhou and Guilin, plus a cruise on the mighty Yangtze River all around China.

During the journey, you can enjoy the brilliant Palaces, magnificent City Walls, Holy Monasteries and crystal-clear streams; you can touch the common folk's life by a Hutong visiting; you can walk along the river Bund, etc. Yangtze River Cruise, Disembark River cruise, Yichang in Shanghai is very popular.

Hong Kong is an endlessly fascinating destination due to its rich history, its cultural diversity and for its many faces. From Buddha images to a vibrant nightlife to endless shopping opportunities to great fine-dining locations, the choices of what to see is mind boggling.

---

**10.5 TEN BIGGEST CITIES OF CHINA AND HONG KONG:**

---

---

**1. Shanghai:**

---

- **Location:** The Yangtze Delta, Central East China
- **Urban population:** 22 million
- **GDP per capita:** \$12k

Shanghai is the undisputed largest and wealthiest city in China. With a name synonymous with world trade, Shanghai has the largest and busiest port in terms of containers and cargo tonnage, a grand business district, two large airports (Pudong and Hongqiao), the world's fastest train (the Maglev), and a network of elevated highways.

---

**2. Beijing:**

---

- **Location:** Near the Bohai Gulf, Northeast China
- **Urban population:** 19 million
- **GDP per capita:** \$10k

Beijing is large primarily because it is China's capital. It is a political, educational, and cultural center, with light industries (science, technology and research) dominating over mass manufacturing.

Beijing has the world's largest airport, and an extensive , mostly new subway system but ongoing traffic congestion issues. The ancient city still features strongly in the core of its 6-ringroad concentric layout.

---

**3. Tianjin:**

---

- **Location:** On the Bohai Gulf, Northeast China
- **Urban population:** 11 million

- **GDP per capita:** \$9k

Tianjin is a huge port and manufacturing center on the Bohai Gulf, with a significant history due to its key location on the Grand Canal, linking the Yangtze and the Yellow River. Only the seventh largest container port in China, it still shifts over 10 million containers a year, and acts as the shipping gateway to Beijing, only 70 km (40 mi) northwest.

---

**4. Guangzhou:**

---

- **Location:** The Pearl River Delta, Southeast China
- **Urban population:** 11 million
- **GDP per capita:** \$14k

Guangzhou is a mighty manufacturing base, drawing millions from the countryside to work in its factories. Vast quantities of clothing, electronics, plastic goods, and toys are shipped from Guangzhou all over the world. A city that has sprung up recently with China's economic boom, it hosts the biannual China Import and Export Fair or Canton fair.

---

**5. Shenzhen:**

---

- **Location:** The Pearl River Delta, Southeast China
- **Urban population:** 10 million
- **GDP per capita:** \$16k

Shenzhen is located in between Guangzhou and Hong Kong. It is a huge manufacturing center that has sprung up overnight. Feeding off the success of its neighbors, it is ranked fourth in China for industrial output, manufacturing higher technology products than Guangzhou in general, and with several of its own successful sunrise companies.

---

**6. Guangdong:**

---

- **Location:** The Pearl River Delta, Southeast China
- **Urban population:** 8 million
- **GDP per capita:** \$9k

Guangdong is a little-known but huge manufacturing city between Guangzhou and Shenzhen, ranked fourth in China for exports. It has also grown phenomenally in the last couple of decades. It employs huge numbers of rural factory workers, producing electronic items and other hardware, like computer peripherals.

---

**7. Taipei:**

---

- **Location:** North coast of Taiwan, Southeast China

- **Urban population:** 8 million
- **GDP per capita:** \$48k

Taipei is less of a modern arrival on the world scene with its post-war rise to prosperity alongside other Asian Tiger economies. Considered a developed world city, its major industries are textiles and electronics. Taipei is the capital of Taiwan, or the Republic of China, which, while not acknowledged as independent from the Mainland, enjoys almost complete autonomy.

---

**8. Chengdu:**

---

- **Location:** The Sichuan Basin, West Central China
- **Urban population:** 7 million
- **GDP per capita:** \$8k

Chengdu is an exception among large Chinese cities. It's the only urban area of over 7 million people not in East China, near the Pacific coast. The largest city in mostly mountainous or arid West China, it is a concentration of the population of the Sichuan Basin. The pace of life is the most relaxed of China's large cities.

Though industry does play a part in Chengdu's economy, its growth is more a result of the tide of urbanization driving the rural population towards the cities in search of better paid work, than of foreign or domestic investment. With Chengdu being the lone large city in Sichuan Province people gravitate there.

---

**9. Hong Kong:**

---

- **Location:** The Pearl River Delta, Southeast China
- **Urban population:** 7 million
- **GDP per capita:** \$32k

Hong Kong is another Asian Tiger economic powerhouse, which has a similar standard of living to large Western cities, despite its higher population density. It is the most developed of China's cities, with the highest living cost.

Hong Kong's major industries are all tertiary (service) sector, including finance, communications, and foreign investments. It has the world's third largest container port, but unlike other Chinese ports its exports mainly come from other Chinese cities.

---

**10. Hangzhou:**

---

- **Location:** The Yangtze Delta, Central East China
- **Urban population:** 7 million

- **GDP per capita:** \$11k

Hangzhou is one of the most prosperous cities in mainland China in terms of GDP per capita. It has a variety of manufacturing industry, from machinery to textiles to IT. Hangzhou has benefited almost disproportionately from the spread of wealth, development, and investment from Shanghai, only about an hour northeast.

Hangzhou has wide, clean, and orderly roads and a network of expressways. Everything seems well maintained, extending to the upkeep of its tourist attractions.

---

## 9.6 TOURISM RESOURCES IN CHINA AND HONG KONG

---

China has 5 megacities (urban areas of 10 million inhabitants – see above). This compared to 3 in India, 2 in the USA, Japan, and Brazil, and 1 in 14 other countries. China has 14 cities of over 5 million people (Shanghai, Beijing, Tianjin, Guangzhou, Shenzhen, Dongguan, Taipei, Chengdu, Hong Kong, Nanjing, Wuhan, Shenyang, Hangzhou, and Chongqing), whereas the USA has 8, India 7, Japan and Brazil 3, and 31 other countries have 1. So China has 21% of the world's 5-million-person cities.

China has 41 cities of over 2 million people, 20% of the world total, compared with the USA's 21, India's 15, Brazil's 12, and Japan's 6.

China has 79 (16.5%) of the world's 478 largest built up areas (i.e. city and connected suburbs), compared to 55 for India, 53 for the US and 50 for the EU. China has over 100 built up areas of over 1 million people.

China has half of the world's top 6 city clusters.

The Pearl River Delta (Population: 120 million, including Guangzhou, Shenzhen, Dongguan, Hong Kong, Foshan, Zhuhai, and Macau)

The Yangtze River Delta (88 million, including Shanghai, Nanjing, Hangzhou, Ningbo, Suzhou)

The Bohai Rim (66 million, including Beijing, Tianjin, Shenyang, Dalian, Dandong, Yantai, Jinan, Qinhuangdao, Qingdao, and Weihai)

The other three are The Indo-Gangetic Plain (200 million), The European Backbone (90 million), and The Tokyo Region (80 million).

Hong Kong's *de facto* official language is Cantonese, a Chinese language originating from Guangdong province to the north of Hong Kong. English is also an official language, and according to a 1996 by-census is spoken by 3.1 percent of the population as an everyday language and by 34.9 percent of the population as a second language. Signs displaying

both Chinese and English are common throughout the territory. Since the 1997 handover, an increase in immigrants from mainland China and greater integration with the mainland economy have brought an increasing number of Mandarin speakers to Hong Kong.

A majority of residents of Hong Kong would claim no religious affiliation, professing a form of agnosticism or atheism. According to the U.S Department of State only 43 percent of the population practices some form of religion. Some figures put it higher, according to a Gallup poll, 64% of Hong Kong residents do not believe in any religion, and possibly 80% of Hong Kong claim no religion. In Hong Kong teaching evolution won out in curriculum dispute about whether to teach other explanations, and that creationism and intelligent design will form no part of the senior secondary biology curriculum.

Hong Kong enjoys a high degree of religious freedom, guaranteed by the Basic Law. Hong Kong's main religions are Buddhism, Taoism and Confucianism.

The tourism industry has been an important part of the economy of Hong Kong since it shifted to a service sector model in the late 1980s and early 90s. There has been a sharp increase of tourists from Mainland China, due to the introduction of the Individual Visit Scheme (IVS) in 2003.

The total tourism expenditure associated with inbound tourism reached HK\$7,333 per capita in 2011. According to the Hong Kong Tourism Board (HKTB) Overall visitor arrivals to Hong Kong in 2010 totalled just over 36 million, a 21.8% increase over the previous year. The numbers included approximately 22.5 million mainland Chinese arrivals, 8.2 million short-haul (excluding Mainland) arrivals, and 4.8 million long-haul arrivals. In July 2011 more than 3.8 million visitors arrived in Hong Kong, equivalent to more than half of Hong Kong's population and setting an outright record for a single month.

While facing increasing competition from Mainland cities and Macau, the Hong Kong Tourism Board works closely with authorities and trade to make Hong Kong an essential component in all combo and multi-destination itineraries.

Tourism, along with international trade and financial services are the three main sources of income for Hong Kong.

Tourism in China has greatly expanded over the last few decades since the beginning of reform and opening. The emergence of a newly rich middle class and an easing of restrictions on movement by the Chinese authorities are both fueling this travel boom. China has become one of the world's most-watched and hottest inbound and outbound tourist markets. The world is on the cusp of a sustained Chinese tourism boom.

According to the WTO, in 2020, China will become the largest tourist country and among the largest for overseas travel. In terms of total outbound travel spending, China is expected to be the fastest growing in the world from 2006 to 2015, jumping into the number two slot for total travel spending by 2015. China's growing economy is also generating a surge in business travel. In China the percentage of sales dependent on business travel is higher (38%) as compared to the US (21%) and 28% in the UK, according to the World Travel & Tourism Council's 2013 business travel forecast for the Asia-Pacific region.

---

**9.7 TOP 10 PLACES IN CHINA AND HONGKONG:**

---

---

**9.7.1 TOP 10 ATTRACTIONS OF CHINA:**

---

China has a lot of historic attractions to offer such as the famous Forbidden City, the Great Wall and the Terracotta Army. In recent years China has modernized rapidly however as the Communist Party decentralized economic decision making and opened the economy to increase foreign trade. The ambitious skylines of Shanghai and other Chinese cities are a triumphant statement of this process.

---

**1. Great Wall of China:**

---

The Great Wall of China is one of the greatest sights in the world. The longest wall in the world, it is an awe-inspiring feat of ancient defensive architecture. Its winding path over rugged country and steep mountains takes in some great scenery. It deserves its place among "the New Seven Wonders of the World" and the UNESCO World Heritage sites in China.

The Great Wall of China built, rebuilt, and maintained between the 5th century BC and the 16th century to protect the northern borders of the Chinese Empire from the attacks of nomadic tribes from the north. The majority of the existing walls were built during the Ming Dynasty (1368-1644 AD). The condition of the Great Wall of China ranges from excellent to ruined. The most popular area of the Great Wall is at Badaling.

---

**2. Potala Palace:**

---

Situated 130 meters above the Lhasa valley, the Potala Palace rises a further 170 meters and is the greatest monumental structure in all of Tibet. The construction of the present palace began in 1645 during the reign of the 5th Dalai Lama and by 1648 the Potrang Karpo, or White Palace, was completed.

The Potrang Marpo, or Red Palace, was added between 1690 and 1694. The Potala Palace remained the residence of the Dalai Lama until the 14th Dalai Lama fled to India, after the Chinese invasion in 1959.

---

### **3. Forbidden City:**

---

Located in the center of Beijing, the Forbidden City is the world's largest palace covering 72 hectares. Built from 1406 to 1420, the palace complex consists of 980 surviving buildings with 8,707 rooms surrounded by a six meter (20 ft) deep moat and a ten meter (33 ft) high wall. Twenty-four emperors reigned over the country for almost 5 centuries from the Forbidden City until the abdication of Puyi, the last Emperor of China. Today the Forbidden City is a museum and one of the most popular tourist attractions in China.

---

### **4. Victoria Harbour:**

---

Victoria Harbour is a major tourist attraction in Hong Kong and one of the deepest container ports in the world. The bay offers stunning views of the skyscrapers of Hong Kong Island on one side, and the Tsim Sha Tsui shoreline on the other. Victoria Harbour is also one of the busiest harbors in the world with hundreds of ferries, junks and speed boats darting up and down the shore. One of the best ways to see the harbor is a trip on the Star Ferry.

---

### **5. Terracotta Army:**

---

The Terracotta Army is a collection of terracotta sculptures depicting the armies of Qin Shi Huang (221 BC-206 BC), the first Emperor of China. It is the most popular tourist attraction in Xian and one of the most popular in all of China. It is estimated that in the three pits containing the Terracotta Army there were over 8,000 soldiers, 130 chariots with 520 horses and 150 cavalry horses, the majority of which are still buried in the pits.

---

### **6. Li River Cruise:**

---

A Li River cruise from Guilin to Yangshuo is the highlight of any trip to northeastern Guangxi Province. The landscape is decorated with amazing hills, steep cliffs, incredible caves and farming villages, and is lined with bamboo groves. With its breathtaking scenery and taste of a life far removed from the concrete metropolis, the scenery along the Li River is one of the top tourist attractions in China.

---

### **7. Mount Huang:**

---

One the Yellow Mountains is one of the most famous and beautiful mountains in China. It was enlisted as a World Heritage Site by UNESCO in 1990. Outstanding natural beauty is Huangshan's number one feature. Yellow Mountain's classic attractions could be

---

counted as five natural wonders in the winter: the imaginatively named pines, oddly-shaped rocks, the sea of clouds, hot springs and winter snows capes.

Mount Huang is a mountain range in eastern China also known as Huangshan (“Yellow Mountain”). The area is well known for its scenery, pine trees, peculiarly-shaped granite peaks and views of the clouds from above. In ancient times almost 60,000 stone steps were carved into the side of the mountain range. Today there are also cable cars that tourists can use to ride directly from the base to one of the summits.

---

**8. Leshan Giant Buddha:**

---

The Giant Buddha of Leshan is a gigantic Buddha statue carved out of a cliff face in Sichuan, western China. Begun in the year 713 during the Tang Dynasty, the statue was not completed until the year 803, and was the effort of thousands of sculptors and workers. The Leshan Giant Buddha stands about 71 meters (233 feet) high and has three meter (11 feet) long fingers on each of its enormous resting hands.

---

**9. Mogao Caves:**

---

The Mogao caves form a system of 492 temples 25 km (15.5 miles) southeast of the center of Dunhuang, an oasis strategically located at a crossroads on the Silk Road. The caves contain some of the finest examples of Buddhist art spanning a period of about 1,000 years. Construction of the Buddhist cave shrines began in 366 AD as places to store scriptures and art. Along with the Longmen Grottoes and Yungang Grottoes, the Mogao Caves are one of the three most famous ancient rock-cut temples in China.

---

**10. Pudong Skyline:**

---

Pudong is a district in Shanghai on the eastern side of the Huangpu River that has emerged as China's financial and commercial hub. A skyline of gleaming skyscrapers rises out of what was mere farmland only 20 years ago. Skyscrapers include the symbolic Oriental Pearl Tower, the Shanghai World Financial Center, the Jin Mao Building and the Shanghai Tower that should be finished in 2014.

---

**9.7.2 TOP 10 ATTRACTIONS OF HONG KONG:**

---

---

**1. The Peak:**

---

Talk about getting high in Hong Kong: The Peak not only has tremendous views out over the harbour and neighboring islands but it's also a gastronomic destination, a place of historical interest, probably the coolest place in town as well as being the location for Madame Tussaud.

---

**2. Symphony of Lights, Tsim Sha Tsui:**

---

This nightly light show is a wonderful sight to behold. The show creates an all-round vision of coloured lights, laser beams and searchlights performing a stunning, unforgettable spectacle, all synchronized to music and narration. This must-see Hong Kong experience is best appreciated by taking a harbour cruise.

---

**3. Disneyland:**

---

The only Disneyland in the world built according to the rules of Feng Shui, the park consists of four themed lands similar to other Disneyland parks: Main Street, U.S.A., Fantasyland, Adventure land and tomorrow land. The park features daily firework shows and has regular parades and even a live musical. The Hong Kong Disneyland is ready to show you the magic .There are four main areas - Main Street, USA; Adventure land; Fantasyland; and Tomorrow land.

Main Street USA has the shops for you to get your souvenirs. Adventure land has shows and rides related to jungles. Fantasyland has the Mickey's 3D show, complete with other effects, and is where you can have your picture taken with the Disney characters. Tomorrow land has the rides that ride-lovers will not want to miss (like Space Mountain and Buzz Light year Astro Blasters). All three areas have restaurants and shops.

---

**4. Giant Buddha Lantau Island:**

---

The world's tallest outdoors seated bronze Buddha, the Tian Tan, is a sight to behold and is located near Po Lin Monastery on Lantau Island. It was built to symbolize the harmonious relationship between man and nature, people and religion. A major centre of Buddhism in Hong Kong, the imposing image is also a popular tourist attraction.

---

**5. Stanley Market and Murray House:**

---

This seven-days-a-week market attracts visitors by the droves and no wonder: It's a veritable treasure trove and bargain-hunters from all over the world join in the fun of haggling with shopkeepers and stallholders. Bargain for brand-name clothing and accessories, or simply irresistible souvenirs, ornaments and other Oriental bric-a-brac in a riot of colours, scents and sights.

---

**6. Temple Street Night Market:**

---

Another busy market that will boggle the mind with its diversity. Temple Street Night Market ostensibly opens at 16:00 but it really gets going past dark, when it is a barrage of brightly lit stalls selling cheap goods with the emphasis on men's accessories but also selling secondhand items such as radios and antiques.

---

**7. Lan Kwai Fong & Soho:**

---

Lan Kwai Fong is an L-shaped, cobble-stoned lane surrounded by Central's cluster of skyscrapers. It takes up just a crowded two-block stretch but makes up for its lack of spread by exuding a lively and energetic feel. Revelers head here for the area's world-famous collection of over 100 bars, clubs and restaurants.

---

**8. Jumbo Kingdom:**

---

A huge floating restaurant, Jumbo Kingdom has hosted royalty, movie stars and about 30 million other visitors. The 'ship' divides up into five culinary, themed restaurants and also sports a bronze ware exhibition and a wine garden. Jumbo Kingdom is quite a sight at night with its Classic Chinese design, brightly-lit decks reflected on the waters of Aberdeen Harbour. A meal here is an impressive experience.

---

**9. Happy Valley Racecourse:**

---

The only legal form of gambling and the city's recreational passion, Happy Valley Racecourse is immensely popular with the Hongkongese. Gambling on the horses is Pastime Number One here (and it's taken very seriously), with thousands of spectators flocking weekly to the impressive track.

---

**10. Hong Kong Wetland Park New Territories:**

---

Located at the northern part of Tin Shui Wai, New Territories, Wetland Park is a marvelous showcase of Mother Nature. The 61-hectare park has a 10,000sqm visitors' centre and demonstrates the diversity of the Hong Kong's wetland ecosystem and highlights the need to conserve it.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS:**

---

- Write a short notes on variety of tourism products in China and Hong Kong.
- What are the tourist attractions of China and Hong Kong?
- Make a list of top 10 biggest cities of China and Hong Kong.
- Indicate the 10 biggest cities in the maps of China and Hong Kong.
- Indicate the top 10 places to visit in the map of China and Hong Kong.

---

**9.8 LETS UP SUM UP:**

---

This unit gives ideas about the brief history of Canada. After going through this unit, we have understood that which are the important cities, their geographical location, culture, environment, history, economy and government etc. We came to know the major attractions/tourist destination and their different dimensions in the country. This

unit gives complete information that makes Canada a most preferred destination all over the world.

This unit ends with the description of top places to visit in Canada, which help to choose a destination as per the interest of the tourists.

---

**9.9 CLUES TO ANSWERS:**

---

- Refer Sec. 9.4
- Refer Sec. 9.7
- Refer Sec. 9.5
- Refer Sec.9.5
- Refer Sec. 9.7
- Refer Sec. 9.3

---

**REFERENCES:**

---

- Chan, Kam Wing (2007). Misconceptions and Complexities in the study of China's Cities: Definitions, Statistics, and Implications. *Eurasian Geography and Economics* 48 (4): 383-412. Doi: 10.2747/1538-7216.48.4.383. Retrieved 7 August 2011. p. 395
- What are China's largest and richest cities ? University of Southern California US-China Institute. 2007. Retrieved 15 January 2012.
- China 's Total Population and Structural Changes in 2011.stats.gov.cn. Retrieved 14 August 2012.
- Communique of the National Bureau of Statistics of People's Republic of China on Major Figure of the 2010 Population census. Stats.gov.cn. Retrieved 1 November 2011.
- World Economic world Economic Outlook database: China. International Monetary fund. October 2012. Retrieved 2 January 2013.
- Walton, Greg; International Centre for Human Rights and Democratic Development (2001).
- Exclutive summary. *China's golden shield: Corporations and the development of surveillance technology in the People's Republic of China*. Rights & Democracy. p. 5. ISBN 978-2-922084-42-9. Retrieved 29 August 2009.
- Visitor Arrivals in July Exceed 3.8 Million to Break Single -Month Record, Hong Kong Tourism Board, 26 August 2011

**Unit-10****Thailand: History, Different Tourism Products, Biggest Cities  
and Top 10 Tourist Places**

---

**Structure:****10.1 Objectives****10.2 Introduction****10.3 History of Thailand****10.4 Variety of Tourism Products in Thailand****10.5 Thailand's Ten Biggest Cities****10.6 Tourism Resources in Thailand****10.7 Top Ten Places in Thailand****10.8 Lets up Sum Up****10.9 Clues to Answers**

---

**10.1 OBJECTIVES:**

---

The aim of this unit is to provide information of Thailand, Tourism point of view. This unit will guide to the student about the Geographical location and all Tourism aspects of Thailand, who attract not only the domestic tourists but also the foreign tourists in terms of tourism receipts and tourist arrivals.

After going through Unit-11 on Thailand, You will understand the following:

- Geographical location of the country
- Historical richness of the Country
- Importance of Culture in development of Tourism
- Characteristics of Tourism industry in Thailand
- Natural attractions in the Country
- Important tourist cities in the Country
- Top tourist attractions of the Country

---

**10.2 INTRODUCTION:**

---

Unit 11, makes an effort to gives the idea to the students about the Thailand as a tourist destination and help them to understand the various dimensions of the Tourism attractions of the country. This unit attempts to through the light on the important cities, Geographical aspects, Attractions (Natural and Man-made), culture and its all aspects, environment, history, economy, government etc. in Thailand.

Some interesting facts about Thailand:

- **Name:** Kingdom of Thailand
- **Motto:** "Nation, Religion, King"
- **Population:** 66,720,153 (estimate 2011)
- **Capital:** Bangkok
- **Language:** Thai
- **Religion:** Buddhism
- **Government:** Unitary parliamentary constitutional monarchy
- **Currency:** Baht

---

**10.3 HISTORY OF THAILAND:**

---

Thailand formerly known as Siam is a country located at the centre of the Indochina peninsula in Southeast Asia. It is bordered to the north by Burma and Laos, to the east by Laos and Cambodia, to the south by the Gulf of Thailand and Malaysia, and to the west by the Andaman Sea and the southern extremity of Burma. Its maritime boundaries include Vietnam in the Gulf of Thailand to the southeast, and Indonesia and India in the Andaman Sea to the southwest.

The country is a constitutional monarchy, headed by King Rama IX, the ninth king of the House of Chakri, who having reigned since 1946, is the world's longest serving head of state and the longest reigning monarch in Thai history. The king of Thailand is titled Head of State, Head of the Armed Forces, the Upholder of the Buddhist religion, and the Defender of all Faiths.

Thailand is the world's 51<sup>st</sup> largest Country in terms of total area, with an area of approximately 513,000 km<sup>2</sup> (198,000 sq mi), and is the 20th most populous Country, with around 64 million people. The capital and largest city is Bangkok, which is Thailand's political, commercial, industrial and cultural hub. About 75% of the population is ethnically Thai, 14% is of Chinese origin, and 3% is ethnically Malay; the rest belong to minority groups including Mons, Khmers and various hill tribes. The country's official language is Thai. The primary religion is Buddhism which is practiced by around 95% of the population.

Tourist numbers have grown from 336,000 foreign visitors and 54,000 R&R soldiers in 1967 to over 22 million international guests visiting Thailand in 2012. The average duration of their stay in 2007 was 9.19 days, generating an estimated 547,782 million Thai Baht around 11 billion Euro. In 2007, Thailand was the 18th most visited country in the World Tourism Ranking with 14.5 million visitors.

In 2008, Bangkok ranked 3rd behind London and New York in Euro monitor international' list of "Top City Destinations" with 10,209,900 visitors, Pattaya 23rd with 4,406,300 visitors, Phuket 31st with 3,344,700 visitors, and Chaing Mai ranked 78th place with 1,604,600 visitors.

Domestic tourism has also grown significantly in the past decade. Revenues from domestic tourism have gone from 187,898 million baht in 1998 to 380,417 million baht (approximately 7.8 billion Euro) in 2007.

Asian tourists primarily visit Thailand for Bangkok and the historical, natural and cultural sights in its vicinity. Western tourists not only visit Bangkok and surroundings but in addition many travels down to the southern beaches and islands. The North is the main region for trekking and adventure travel with its diverse ethnic minority groups and forested mountains. The region receiving less tourists is Isan in the north-east. To facilitate foreign visitors, the Thai government established separate tourism police with offices in the major tourist areas and its own central emergency telephone number.

Sex Tourism also contributes to arrival numbers. Although officially illegal, prostitution in Thailand is monitored and regulated by the government to stem the spread of STD's and to prevent excesses. Prostitution catering to foreigners is believed to be around 20% of the total prostitution scene in Thailand, and is concentrated in a few major red light districts such as Pattaya, Patpong and Patong Beach.

Thailand has been receiving increased competition ever since Laos, Cambodia and Vietnam opened up to international tourism in the 1980s and 90s. Destinations like Angkor Wat, Luang Prabang and Halong Bay now contest Thailand's former monopoly in the Indochina region. To counter this, Thailand is actively targeting niche markets such as golf holidays, or holidays combined with medical treatment.

Thailand has also planned on becoming the hub for Buddhist tourism in the region. Around 2 million foreigners visiting Thailand for medical treatment are expected in 2009, more than 3 times the amount of tourist visiting for that purpose in 2002. According to Lonely Planet, Thailand ranks second of "Best-value destinations for 2010" after Iceland; the latter having been hit very hard by the subprime mortgage crisis.

The main marketing slogan for promoting Thailand internationally was "**Amazing Thailand**". The main marketing slogan for promoting Thai tourism to the Thai is Unseen in Thailand.

---

#### **10.4 VARIETY OF TOURISM PRODUCTS:**

---

Thailand's multi-faceted sights, attractions and city life appeal to diverse groups of tourists. Royal palaces and temples as well as several museums constitute its major historical and cultural tourist attractions. Shopping and dining experiences offer a wide range of choices and prices.

There are many fascinating destinations across the length and breadth of Thailand. TAT has carefully chosen a number of exemplary destinations in the 5 regions of the country to present an expedient and diverse selection of agro-tourism experiences. 'Agro-tourism: Green Travel in Thailand' provides useful information that allows readers to plan trips to learn about local wisdom and participate in traditional Thai agricultural activities.

Apart from gigantic Teelorsu waterfall and rafting to discover the ancient painting at Pa Taem, it also portrays locals way of life, how to get the most out of nature and travel guide. Nan, Pai, Chiangkhan and Samui, pilot destinations for green tourism, are inserted to study how green consciousness was initiated

The little district of Pai in Mae Hong Son Province can be reached by taking Chiang Mai - Mae Hong Son route. If traveling by car, start from Chiang Mai and move along the challenging steep roads with sharp corners. Pai District, once a rest area to sip coffee and to go to the rest room, was turned into a community of those creative travelers who might not be the native residents but fell in love with the nature, its leisure and serenity around this place. Little by little, the settlement of the passersby has turned "Pai" into a tourist attraction filled with scenery and facilities.

World travel trends affect tourists' behavior. They are becoming more environmental conscious. Although countries fiercely compete to maintain their tourist share, a good

balance in order to preserve the nature can not be overlooked. Rich nature has been a good selling point for Thailand and is now being combined with eco-tourism that has spread into various activities designed to attract adventurous and green tourists. Creative Tourism, Eco-Tourism, MICE Tourism, Health and Spa Tourism, Religious Tourism ,Cultural Tourism, Sex Tourism are also very popular types of tourism in Thailand. Thus we can say that Thailand is a very popular tourist destination for all types of Tourism.

---

**10.5 THAILAND'S TEN BIGGEST CITIES:**

---

---

**1. Bangkok:**

---

Bangkok is the capital and the most populous city of Thailand. Bangkok is one of the world's top tourist destination cities. It is ranked third in international visitors in MasterCard's Global Destination Cities Index, after London and Paris. It also ranks third in international visitor spending, with 19.3 billion dollars for 2012, after London and New York. Bangkok has acquired the nickname "Sin City of Asia" for its level of sex tourism.

---

**2. Nonthaburi:**

---

Nonthaburi is a province in central Thailand, located just northwest of Bangkok. Known for its tranquil atmosphere, it blends urban convenience with traditional charm. The area features historic temples, lush parks, and vibrant markets. It is also famous for growing durians. As part of the Bangkok Metropolitan Region, Nonthaburi serves as a peaceful residential and cultural hub.

---

**3. Pak Kret:**

---

Pak Kret is a district in the northeastern part of Nonthaburi province, central Thailand. The district is located in the northeast of the province. It borders (from north clockwise) the districts Lat Lum Kaeo and Mueang Pathum Thani of Pathum Thani Province, Don Mueang and Lak Si of Bangkok, and Mueang Nonthaburi and Bang Bua Thong of Nonthaburi. The district is crossed by the Chao Phraya River.

---

**4. Hat Yai:**

---

Hat Yai is a city in southern Thailand near the Malaysian border. It is the largest city of Songkhla province, the largest metropolitan area in Southern and third largest metropolitan area of the country.

---

**5. Udon Thani:**

---

It is in the northeastern region of Thailand and is bordered by Nong Khai to the north, Sakho Nakhon to the east, Khon Kaen to the south and the Loei to the west.

---

**6. Chiang Mai:**

---

Chiang Mai is situated on the Mae Ping River basin and is 300 m above sea level. Surrounded by the high mountain ranges of the Thai highlands, it covers an area of approximately 20,107 km<sup>2</sup>. The city of Chiang Mai was capital of the Lanna Kingdom after its founding in 1296, during the same period of time as the establishment of the Sukhothai Kingdom. From then, Chiang Mai not only became the capital and cultural core of the Lanna Kingdom, it was also the centre of Buddhism in northern Thailand and King Meng Rai built innumerable temples.

---

**7. Nakhon Ratchasima:**

---

Nakhon Ratchasima is positioned in the north-east of Thailand It is bordered by Chaiyaphum to the north, Sa Kaeo to the south-east, Saraburi to the west, and Prachin Buri to the south. To the north-east of Nakhon Ratchasima is the Khon Kaen.

---

**8. Surat Thani:**

---

Surat Thani is the largest of the Southern provinces of Thailand on the western shore of the Gulf of Thailand. Surat Thani means City of Good People; the title given to the city by King Vajiravudh (Rama VI).The area of Surat Thani was already inhabited in prehistoric times by Semang and Malayan tribes.

Founded in the 3rd century, until the 13th century the Srivijaya kingdom dominated the Malay Peninsula. The city Chaiya contains several ruins from Srivijaya times, and was probably a regional capital of the kingdom. Some Thai historians even claim that it was the capital of the kingdom itself for some time, but this is generally disputed. Wiang Sa was another main settlement of that time.

---

**9. Khon Kaen:**

---

Khon Kaen is the second-largest of the North-eastern provinces of Thailand. Neighboring provinces are (from north clock wise) Nongbua Lamphu, Udon Thani, Kalasin, Maha Sarakham, Buriram, Nakhon Ratchasima, Chaiyaphum, Phetchabun and Loei. Khon Kaen is located in the heart of the Khorat Plateau. The Chi River flows through this province.

---

**10. Nakhon Si Thammarat:**

---

Nakhon Si Thammarat is one of the southern provinces of Thailand, at the eastern shore of the Gulf of Thailand. Neighboring provinces are (from south clockwise) Songkhla, Phatthalung, Trang, Krabi and Surat Thani. The province is located on the shore of the Gulf of Thailand on the east side of the Malay Peninsula.

The terrain is mostly rugged hilly forest area. It contains the highest elevation of southern Thailand, the Khao Luang with 1,835 m, now protected in the Khao Luang national park.

---

**10.6 TOURISM RESOURCES IN THAILAND:**

---

**Central and eastern seaboard Thailand**

- Ayutthaya
- Bangkok
- Hua Hin
- Kanchanburi
- Ko Chang
- Pattaya
- Ko Samet
- Rayong
- Sriracha
- Bangsean
- Lopburi

**Northern Thailand:**

- Chiang Mai
- Chiang rai
- Mae Hong son
- Pai
- Lampang

**North-eastern Thailand:**

- Khao Yai National Park
- Phimai historical park
- Udon Thani
- Khon Kaen
- Nong Khai

**Southern Thailand**

- Hat Yai
- Ko Tao
- Krabi
- Nakhon Si Thammarat
- Phang Nga

- Phuket
- Ko Samui
- Trang
- Ko Lipe
- Tarutao
- Khao Lak
- Songkhla

**Wat Phra Kaeo:** Wat Phra Kaeo in the Grand Palace is among Bangkok's major tourist attractions.

**Phanom Rung:** Phanom Rung is a Khmer temple complex set on the rim of an extinct volcano in Buriram Province.

**The ruins of Wat Chaiwatthanaram -** The ruins of Wat Chaiwatthanaram are situated in Ayutthaya. The city was burned and sacked in 1767 by a Burmese army under the King Hsinbyushin.

**Stupas at Ayutthaya Historical Park:** Ayutthaya's expansion centred along the Menam while in the northern valley the Lanna Kingdom and other small Tai city-states ruled the area. In 1431, the Khmer abandoned Angkor after the Ayutthaya forces invaded the city.

**Gilded statue of a seated Buddha:** The immense 19 metre high gilded statue of a seated Buddha in Wat Phanan Choeng, the latter from 1324, pre-dates the founding of the city.

**Buddha image in Sukhothai:** 15 metre high Buddha image in Sukhothai, Phra Achana, built in 13th Century.

**Bangkok's Democracy Monument:** Bangkok's Democracy Monument is a representation of the 1932 Constitution sits on top of two golden offering bowls above a turret.

**The southern region:** The southern provinces of Thailand showing the Malay-Muslim majority areas. Thailand controlled the Malay Peninsula as far as Malacca in the 1400s and held much of the peninsula, including Temasek (Singapore) some of the Andaman islands and a colony on Java, but eventually failed when the British used force to guarantee their suzerainty over the sultanate.

Totaling 513,120 square kilometres (198,120 sq mi), Thailand is the world's 51<sup>st</sup> -largest Country by total area. It is slightly smaller than Yemen and slightly larger than Spain.

Southern Thailand consists of the narrow Kra Isthmus that widens into the Malay Peninsula. Politically, there are six geographical regions which differ from the others in population, basic resources, natural features, and level of social and economic

development. The diversity of the regions is the most pronounced attribute of Thailand's physical setting.

The Chao Phraya and the Mekong River are the sustainable resource of rural Thailand. Industrial scale productions of crops use both rivers and their tributaries. The Gulf of Thailand covers 320,000 square kilometres (124,000 sq mi) and is fed by the Chao Phraya, Mae Klong, Bang Pakong and Tapi Rivers. It contributes to the tourism sector owing to its clear shallow waters along the coasts in the Southern Region and the Kra Isthmus. The Gulf of Thailand is also an industrial centre of Thailand with the kingdom's main port in Sattahip along with being the entry gates for Bangkok's Inland seaport.

Rugby is also a growing sport in Thailand with the Thailand national rugby union team rising to be ranked 61st in the world. Thailand became the first country in the world to host an international 80 kg welterweight rugby tournament in 2005.

Thailand has been called the Golf Capital of Asia as it is a popular destination for golf. The country attracts a large number of golfers from Japan, Korea, Singapore, South Africa and Western countries who come to play golf in Thailand every year. The growing popularity of golf, especially among the middle classes and expats, is evident since there are more than 200 world-class golf courses nationwide, and some of them are chosen to host PGA and LPGA tournaments, such as Amata Spring Country Club, Alpine Golf & Sports Club, Thai Country Club and Black Mountain Golf Club. Basketball is also a growing sport in Thailand, especially on the professional sports club level. Other sports in Thailand are slowly growing as the country develops its sporting infrastructure. The success in sports like weightlifting and Taekwondo at the last two Summer Olympic Games has demonstrated that boxing is no longer the only medal chance for Thailand.

---

## **10.7 TOP 10 PLACES IN THAILAND:**

---

---

### **1. Mark Fischer:**

---

One of the most popular tourism destinations in Southeast Asia, Thailand is a country with a fascinating history, a devout Buddhist culture and beautiful scenery that lures travelers from all over the world. For many cultural travelers it is a land of ancient temples, glittering spires and beautiful palaces. For sun-seeking hedonists it is a place to rejuvenate on palm-studded beaches that rim idyllic bays and islands. For international foodies it is a culinary Mecca whose restaurants and sidewalk food stands keep coming back for more.

---

**2. Chiang Mai:**

---

Thailand's "Rose of the North" contains both cultural and natural diversity, a multitude of attractions, and welcoming hospitality. Chiang Mai literally means "new city" and has retained the name despite celebrating its 700th anniversary in 1996. King Meng Rai the Great, a very religious leader who founded many of the city's temples, created the city as the capital of the Lanna Kingdom around the same time as the establishment of the Sukhothai Kingdom. Chiang Mai not only became the capital and cultural core of the Lanna Kingdom, but also the center of Buddhism in northern Thailand.

---

**3. Phuket:**

---

When travelers to Thailand talk about sea, sun and sand, Phuket is often the first place that comes to mind. Catapulted to international attention by the James Bond movie "The Man with the Golden Gun" back in 1974, the entire area today boasts many hotels and resorts, which offer all sorts of tourism facilities for travelers.

---

**4. Ayutthaya:**

---

Once considered the most spectacular city on Earth, the ruins of the capital of the Kingdom Ayutthaya are now a major tourist attraction easily accessible from Bangkok by car, train, or boat as either a daytrip or overnight excursion. A regional power for 417 years, the ancient city its apex in the 16th century, when the Kingdom's territory extended into and beyond present-day Laos, Cambodia, and Myanmar. Ayutthaya had diplomatic relations with Louis XIV of France and was courted by Dutch, Portuguese, English, Chinese and Japanese merchants.

---

**5. Kanchanaburi:**

---

Kanchanaburi has become a major tourist destination, with a focus on the outdoors due to its magnificent landscape and charming beauty. Only two hours from Bangkok, Kanchanaburi is accessible by road or rail, and is popular for fishing, rafting, canoeing, mountain biking, bird-watching, star-gazing, golfing and elephant and jungle trekking. The area boasts several well-known waterfalls, caves that were once inhabited by Neolithic man, national parks, tranquil rivers, virgin forests, and several large reservoirs.

---

**6. Krabi:**

---

Krabi is a province on southern Thailand's Andaman coast, is an almost otherworldly region of labyrinthine archipelagos, where islands seem to erupt vertically out of the sea and secluded beaches are only accessible by colorfully adorned long tail boats. Krabi's myriad of bays and coves have sheltered pirates, merchants, and sea gypsies for

thousands of years and archaeological evidence indicates that Krabi was originally inhabited as early as 25,000 – 35,000 years ago.

---

**7. Ratchaburi:**

---

Ratchaburi's premier attraction is the Damnoen Saduak Floating Market, a destination visited by a large percentage of tourists who visit Bangkok. Vendors in the market sell their wares by paddling boats along Ratchaburi's canals. Every morning, hundreds of boats crowd the market, paddled by women in straw hats. For a few hundred baht visitors can hire their own boats and explore the canals while shopping for everything from vegetables and fruits to freshly-cooked noodles and souvenirs.

---

**8. Chon Buri:**

---

Chon Buri, Bangkok's nearest seaside town, is located on the eastern coast of the Gulf of Thailand, about 50 miles from the capital. The area boasts abundant natural resources, making it a popular coastal province among Bangkokians who seek a weekend. Particularly popular is the seaside resort of Pattaya, though Chonburi's smaller, quieter seaside towns are also quite popular with foreigners and Thais alike.

---

**9. Sukhothai:**

---

Founded in the 13th century, Sukhothai, which literally means "Dawn of Happiness", was the first truly independent Thai Kingdom and enjoyed a golden age under King Ramkhamhaeng, who is credited with creating the Thai alphabet. The superb temples and monuments of this great city have been lovingly restored, and Sukhothai Historical Park, a UNESCO World Heritage Site, is popular with travelers, particularly on those occasional nights the park remains open and the graceful Buddhas are illuminated by lights.

---

**10. Phang Nga:**

---

Phang Nga province renowned for its beautiful land, spectacular bay, amazing islands and good diving. It also ranks third in international visitor spending, with 19.3 billion dollars for 2012, after London and New York. Bangkok has acquired the nickname "Sin City of Asia" for its level of sex tourism.

Most famous is Phang Nga Bay National Park, a geological wonder filled with islets, sunken caverns, and startling rock formations rising vertically out of the sea. The bay is extremely sheltered and therefore ideal for expeditions on sea kayaks to explore the many fascinating caverns and islands throughout the bay.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS:**

---

- Write a short note on variety of tourism products in Thailand.
- What are the tourist attractions of Thailand?
- Make a list of top 10 biggest cities of Thailand.
- Indicate the 10 biggest cities in the maps of Thailand.
- Indicate the top 10 places to visit in the map of Thailand.
- Give the list of Tourism Resources of Thailand.

---

**10.8 LETS UP SUM UP:**

---

This unit gives ideas about the brief history of Thailand After going through this unit; we have understood that which are the important cities, their geographical location, culture, environment, history, economy and government etc. We came to know the major attractions / tourist destination and their different dimensions in the country. This unit gives complete information that makes Thailand a most preferred destination all over the world.

This unit ends with the description of top places to visit in Thailand, which help to choose a destination as per the interest of the tourists.

---

**10.9 CLUES TO ANSWERS:**

---

- Refer Sec. 10.4
- Refer Sec. 10.7
- Refer Sec. 10.5
- Refer Sec. 10.5
- Refer Sec. 10.7
- Refer Sec. 10.6

---

**REFERENCES:**

---

- Public Park Office, Environment Department. "Public Park Office website" Bangkok Metropolitan Administration. Retrieved 18 September 2012.
- Statistical Forecasting Bureau (2010).2010 Thailand Statistical Yearbook (Special edition). National Statistical Office.
- Sternstein, Larry (March 1984). "The growth of the population of the world's pre-eminent "primate city": Bangkok at its bicentenary". *Journal of Southeast Asian Studies* 15 (1): 43–68. doi: 10.1017/S0022463400012200.
- International Tourism in Bangkok. Department of Tourism. Retrieved 22 September 2012.

- Howard, Robert W. (June 2009). "Risky business? Asking tourists what hazards they actually encountered in Thailand". *Tourism Management* 30 (3): 359–365. Doi: 10.1016/j.tourman.2008.08.007.
- Baker, Chris; Phongpaichit, Pasuk (2005). *A History of Thailand*. Cambridge University Press. ISBN 978-0-521-01647-6.

**Unit-11****Singapore- History, Different Tourism Products, 10 things to do in Singapore, Important Tourism Products, Top Tourist Places**

---

Structure:

11.1 Objectives

11.2 Introduction

11.3 History of Singapore

11.4 Variety of Tourism Products in Singapore

11.5 Singapore's Ten Biggest Cities

11.6 Tourism Resources in Singapore

11.7 Top Ten Places in Singapore

11.8 Lets up Sum Up

11.9 Clues to Answers

---

**11.1 OBJECTIVES:**

---

The aim of this unit is to provide information of Singapore, Tourism point of view. This unit will guide to the student about the Geographical location and all Tourism aspects of Singapore, who attract not only the domestic tourists but also the foreign tourists in terms of tourism receipts and tourist arrivals. After going through Unit 12 on Singapore, You will understand the following:

- Geographical location of the country
- Historical richness of the Country
- Importance of Culture in development of Tourism
- Characteristics of Tourism industry in Singapore
- Natural attractions in the Country
- Important tourist cities in the Country
- Top tourist attractions of the Country

---

**11.2 INTRODUCTION**

---

Unit 12, makes an effort to gives the idea to the students about the Singapore as a tourist destination and help them to understand the various dimensions of the Tourism attractions of the country. This unit attempts to through the light on the important cities, Geographical aspects, Attractions (Natural and Man-made), culture and its all aspects, environment, history, economy, government etc. in Singapore. Some interesting facts about Singapore:

- **Name:** Singapore
- **Population:** 5,312,400 (2012 census)
- **Capital:** Singapore
- **Language:** Chinese and English
- **Religion:** Buddhism, Christianity, Islam, Taoism , Hinduism and No religion
- **Government:** Unitary parliamentary constitutional Republic
- **Currency:** Singapore dollar (SGD)

---

**11.3 HISTORY OF SINGAPORE:**

---

Singapore is a Southeast Asian Island city-state off the southern tip of the Malay Peninsula, 137 kilometers (85 mi) north of the equator. An island country made up of 63 islands, it is separated from Malaysia by the Straits of Johor to its north and from Indonesia's Riau Islands by the Singapore Strait to its south. The country is highly urbanized with very little primary rainforest remaining, although more land is being created for development through land reclamation.

Part of various local empires since being inhabited in the 2nd century AD, Singapore hosted a trading post of the East India Company in 1819 with permission from the Sultanate of Johar. The British obtained sovereignty over the island in 1824 and Singapore became one of the British Straits Settlements in 1826. Occupied by the Japanese in World War II, Singapore declared independence, uniting with other former British territories to form Malaysia in 1963, although it was separated from Malaysia two years later. Since then, it has had a massive increase in wealth, and is one of the four Asian Tigers.

Singapore consists of 63 islands, including the main island, widely known as Singapore Island but also as pulau ujong. There are two man-made connections to Johor, Malaysia: The Johar – Singapore Causeway in the north, and the Tuas Second Link in the west. Jurong Island, Pulau Tekong, Pulau Ubin and Sentosa are the largest of Singapore's smaller islands. The highest natural point is Bukit Timah Hill at 166 m (545 ft).

There are ongoing land reclamation projects, which have increased Singapore's land area from 581.5 km<sup>2</sup> (224.5 sq mi) in the 1960s to 704 km<sup>2</sup> (272 sq mi) today (2012); it may grow by another 100 km<sup>2</sup> (40 sq mi) by 2030. Some projects involve merging smaller islands through land reclamation to form larger, more functional islands, as with Jurong Island. 5% of Singapore's land is set aside as nature reserves. Urbanisation has eliminated most primary rainforest on the main island, Bukit Timah Nature Reserve being the only significant remaining forest.

Singapore has a tropical rainforest climate with no distinctive seasons, uniform temperature and pressure, high humidity, and abundant rainfall. Temperatures usually range from 23 to 32 °C (73 to 90 °F). Relative humidity averages around 79% in the morning and 73% in the afternoon. April and May are the hottest months, with the wetter monsoon season from November to January. From July to October, there is often haze caused by bush fires in neighboring Indonesia. Although Singapore does not observe daylight saving time, it follows time zone GMT+8, one hour ahead of its geographical location.

The port of Singapore, one of the world's five busiest, with the skyline of Singapore in the background. Before independence in 1965, Singapore was the capital of the British Straits Settlements, a Crown Colony. It was also the main British naval base in East Asia. Because of its status as the main British naval base in the region, as well as hosting the largest dry dock in the world at that time in the form of the Singapore Naval Base, it was described in the press as the 'Gibraltar of the East'. The opening of the Suez Canal in 1869 caused global trade to boom, and Singapore became a major world trade node, and the Port of Singapore became one of the largest and busiest ports in the world. Before independence in 1965, Singapore had a GDP per capita of \$511, then the third-highest in East Asia. After independence, foreign direct investment and a state-led drive for industrialization based on plans by Goh Keng Swee and Albert Winsemius created a modern economy.

Today, Singapore has a highly developed market-based economy, based historically on extended entrepot trade. Along with Hong Kong, South Korea and Taiwan, Singapore is one of the original Four Asian tigers. The Singaporean economy is known as one of the freest, most innovative, most competitive, and most business-friendly. The 2011 Index of Economic freedom ranks Singapore as the second freest economy in the world, behind Hong Kong. According to the Corruption Perceptions Index, Singapore is consistently ranked as one of the least corrupt countries in the world, along with New Zealand and the Scandinavian countries.

Singapore is the 14th largest exporter and the 15th largest importer in the world. The country has the highest trade-to-GDP ratio in the world at 407.9 percent, signifying the importance of trade to its economy. The country is currently the only Asian country to have AAA credit ratings from all three major credit rating agencies – Standard & Poor's, Moody's, and Fitch. Singapore attracts a lot of foreign direct investment because of its location, corruption-free environment, skilled workforce, low tax rates and advanced infrastructure. There are more than 7,000 multinational corporations from the United States, Japan, and Europe in Singapore. There are also 1,500 companies from China and 1,500 from India. Foreign firms are found in almost all sectors of the economy. Singapore is also the second largest foreign investor in India. Roughly 44 percent of the Singaporean workforce is made up of non-Singaporeans. Over ten free trade agreements have been signed with other countries and regions.

Singapore also possesses the world's eleventh largest foreign reserves. The currency of Singapore is the Singapore dollar, issued by the Monetary Authority of Singapore. It is interchangeable with the Brunei dollar.

Tourism also forms a large part of the economy, and 10.2 million tourists visited the country in 2007. To attract more tourists, in 2005 the government legalized gambling and allowed two casino resorts (called Integrated Resorts) to be developed. Singapore is promoting itself as a medical tourism hub: about 200,000 foreigners seek medical care there each year, and Singapore medical services aim to serve one million foreign patients annually by 2013 and generate USD 3 billion in revenue. Singapore is an education hub, and many foreign students study in Singapore. Singapore hosted over 80,000 international students in 2006. There are also more than 5000 Malaysian students who cross the Johor-Singapore Causeway every morning with hopes of receiving a better education in Singapore. In 2009, 20% of all students in Singaporean universities were international students. The students were mainly from ASEAN, China and India.

Singapore is a world leader in several economic areas: The country is the world's fourth leading financial centre, the world's second-biggest casino gambling market, one of the world's top three oil refining centres, the world's largest oil-rig producer, and a major ship-repairer. The port is one of the five busiest ports in the world. The World Bank has named Singapore as the easiest place in the world to do business and ranks Singapore the

world's top logistics hub. It is also the world's fourth largest foreign-exchange trading centre after London, New York and Tokyo.

Singapore has the world's highest percentage of millionaires, with one out of every six households having at least one million US dollars in disposable wealth. This excludes property, businesses, and luxury goods, which if included would further increase the number of millionaires, especially as property in Singapore is among the world's most expensive. Despite its relative economic success, Singapore does not have a minimum wage, believing that it would lower its competitiveness. It also has one of the highest income inequality levels among developed countries, coming in just behind Hong Kong and in front of the United States.

Singapore has four official languages: English, Mandarin Chinese (or *Standard Chinese* to be more precise), Malay, and Tamil. English is the common language of the nation and is the language of business, government and medium of instruction in schools. Public bodies in Singapore conduct their businesses in English, and official documents written in a non-English official language such as Chinese, Malay or Tamil typically have to be translated into English to be accepted for submission. The Singapore Constitution and all laws are written in English, and translators are required if one wishes to address the Singaporean Courts in a language other than English. However, English is the native tongue for only one-third of all Singaporeans, with roughly a third of all Singaporean Chinese, a quarter of all Singaporean Malays and half of all Singaporean Indians speaking it as their native tongue. Twenty percent of Singaporeans, or one out of every five, cannot read or write in English.

The official languages ranked in terms of literacy amongst Singaporeans are English (80% literacy), Mandarin Chinese (65% literacy), Malay (17% literacy) and Tamil (4% literacy). Singaporean English is based on British English and forms of English spoken range from Standard English to a pidgin known as "Singlish". Singlish is heavily discouraged by the government.

---

#### **11.4 VARIETY OF TOURISM PRODUCTS:**

---

Tourists can go to Singapore throughout the year. Nevertheless, the ideal time to visit Singapore is during the festive season. In January every year, the total Chinese population of Singapore rejoices the Chinese New Year on a big scale. China-town, one of the key attractions of Singapore, is totally lit up and adds a festive flavor to the entire area. During this time there are street parades referred to as Chingay. A big bazaar is also organized. The other time when tourists come to Singapore is in November, when the Indians observe Deepawali which is festival of lights. During this time one of the best places in Singapore, Serangoon Road shows the festival fervor.

Singapore is a stellar city when it comes to attractions: Almost everyone will have seen an image of the city's symbol; the Merlion. The impressive Singapore flyer and Marina Bay Sands Sky Park are fast taking on iconic proportions as Raffles Hotel has done for over 100 years.

Science and religion are amply represented by the Science Centre and the Buddha Tooth Relic Temple. Little India and Chinatown are both great gastronomic destinations and while Singapore Botanic Gardens is a gem, the Zoo & Night Safari are also highly recommended for all newcomers to Singapore.

A multi-cultural melting pot with a turbulent history, Singapore has much more to offer than shopping and skyscrapers. Scratch away at its surface and you'll find a lot more than a globalization success story, and a vibrancy you weren't expecting. In fact, you'll find it hard to fit in all the temples, markets, natural wonders, nightlife and cuisine it has to offer, and probably leave wishing you'd seen more. Singapore city is famous for Cultural and Religious Tourism.

The best way to avoid regrets is to take an organized tour. Try a city trip through old Singapore, discovering the charms of Little India and Hindu temples en route, or experience a trishaw journey to Clarke Quay, Singapore's riverside nightlife hotspot. Or perhaps you'd like to escape modernity for a day with a trip to Old Malaya, or a leisurely cable-car ride to Sentosa Island. Sentosa Island is famous for Leisure Tourism.

Cruise Tourism-One of the best ways to get to know Singapore is from the outside looking in; that's to say a cruise. Leisurely, relaxing and memorable, cruising in the harbour is the ideal way to view the city-state. And the best thing about it all is that you can choose between a number of options: The Moring Glory Cruise gives you the chance to check out the early birds while the High Tea Cruise includes a mouth-watering selection of cakes and sandwiches. For those with a large appetite choose the Dinner Cruise that combines the cityscape with a sumptuous dinner buffet. Morning glory cruises, High tea cruise, Dinner Cruise are the few names of the cruise tourism tours.

---

### **11.5 SINGAPORE'S TEN THINGS TO DO:**

---

No one visiting Singapore today would ever guess this bustling country of over sixty islands got its start as a quiet fishing village. With its thriving shipping and technology business, the Southeast Asian country now ranks among the top five richest countries in the world. Millions of visitor's flocks to Singapore each year and these are among the top ten tourist attractions visited.

---

**1. Singapore Botanic Gardens:**

---

This national park in the middle of the hustle and bustle of Singapore is a welcome retreat for visitors and locals alike. A mixture of rainforest, lawns and ponds, the abundance of trees, shrubs and flowers is very peaceful and restful. Also part of the garden is the National Orchid Collection with 1000 orchid species and 2,000 hybrids.

---

**2. Artwork at the Ritz-Carlton**

---

---

**3. Chinatown Heritage Centre**

---

Let the other tourist hordes charge over to the newly minted Peranakan Museum or the gloomy Asian Civilization Museum. If you do only one cultural thing during your 24-hour Singapore layover, it must be a tour of the unheralded Chinatown Heritage Centre, where entire sets of bedrooms, kitchens and street scenes from the late-19th century and early-20th century have been faithfully recreated. It's an authentic slice of Singapore's history that's made all the more fascinating by the gleaming skyscrapers just a few blocks away. And if you must, pick up a kitschy souvenir from the gift shop on your way out.

---

**4. Plastic Surgery**

---

In case you missed the memo, the place for plastic surgery is Asia. While many people head to Bangkok and Seoul for assorted nips and tucks, the locals make a beeline for the ultra-swish, Richard Meier-designed Chamden Medical Centre. You may not have time for a full makeover, but squeeze in a spot of Botox or a non-surgical facelift with local celebrity surgeon Woffles Wu. And then adjourn downstairs for snapper pie and Pavlova at Whitebait and Kale.

---

**5. Electronics for Cheap**

---

Tokyo may have the latest in electronic gadgets, but Singapore has the widest range, and luckily for the time-pressed shopper, they're all clustered in two massive multistory emporia. Handicams, portable DVD players, mobile phones, hi-tech cameras, MP3 players and laptops in just about every imaginable configuration are up for grabs at Funan Digitalife mall and Sim Lim Square. The prices are usually about 10% to 20% cheaper than at other commercial outlets. At Sim Lim Square especially, good deals can be had with some serious haggling, and many retailers will knock off a few extra dollars if you pay in cash.

---

**6. Haji Lane**

---

This tiny lane, hidden away in the heart of the Muslim quarter, is a fashionista's paradise. With very little fanfare, the collections of narrow shop-houses have, in less than a year, been transformed into an aggressively hip retail stretch recalling Le Marais in Paris or New York's Meatpacking District. Know It Nothing is a stylish industrial space that stocks beautifully tailored dress shirts stitched with silver skull buttons by Japanese label Garni. Next, pop into Pluck for its shabby chic collection of Austin Powers-inspired cushion covers and a cute ice-cream parlor. A few doors down, Salad boast a range of home accessories like laser-cut table mats and Hong Kong-based Carrie Chau's quirky postcards. If you're feeling peckish, have an authentic Middle Eastern lunch around the corner at Cafe le Caire.

---

**7. The Singapore Flyer**

---

The 165-meter-high Flyer is Singapore's answer to the London Eye. For the moment, it is the world's largest observation wheel (that title will go to Beijing when its version opens in 2009). Despite much fanfare and hype, the locals have never really taken to the Flyer, grouching that it's too far from anywhere (it's not) and S\$29.50 is a lot of money to pay for a 30-minute ride. Lucky you, since this means you'll almost never have to wait in line. The best time to hitch a ride is at dusk when the entire row of downtown skyscrapers is softly lit. Back on the ground, head for a dinner of chili crabs at Seafood paradise.

---

**8. The White Rabbit**

---

Back in the '50s, Dempsey Hill was home to the British Army. These days, the former barracks, set amidst lush jungle, have been transformed into a fine collection of restaurants, bars, art galleries, epicerics and spas. Recently, the long abandoned garrison church was reopened as the White Rabbit, a restaurant and bar serving up Euro comfort food.

After extensive renovations, its lofty interiors are now a mood-lit bolt-hole that heaves with *tout le monde*. When people aren't busy air-kissing and waving to one another across the crowded dining space, they're tucking into chef Daniel Sia's cleverly re-imagined classics, like macaroni and cheese drizzled with truffle sauce and a deconstructed Black Forest cake. After dinner, head up the hill for a chilled mojito at Margarita's.

---

**9. Geylang**

---

Once upon a time, Bugis Street was Singapore's premier red light district (and forever immortalized in Peter Bogdanovich's *Saint Jack*), but the crown has long since passed to Geylang, an atmospheric quarter on Singapore's east coast that bristles with great period architecture, leggy street walkers and some of the best local food on the island. On offer

is a greedy grab of Peranakan, Indian, Malay and regional Chinese standards including the coconut rice and curry chicken at Bali Nasi Lemak, spicy noodles with roast pork and prawns at Kuching Kolo Mee and the Hakka favourite of rice, vegetables, tofu and peanuts in a tea-based broth at Lei Cha Fan.

---

**10. Zouk:**

---

Despite its prim, strait-laced reputation, Singapore's nightlife is actually quite racy, though compared to Barcelona or New York, the party ends early (around 3 a.m.). After nearly two decades, Zouk is still the throbbing heart of the action. The pulsating institution is a strobe-lit, rambling warren of dance floors, figure-hugging outfits, swagger and seasoned moves. For many of the pretty young hipsters here, it's a rite of passage. If it isn't enough to satisfy your urge to groove, drop into the mammoth Ministry of Sound for a quick shimmy.

---

**11.6 TOURISM RESOURCES IN SINGAPORE:**

---

From the City Hall MRT, take the same way going to Suntec City, just follow the signs. Suntec is one of the biggest malls. There are 5 towers (from an aerial view, the towers look like the sun). Each tower has a mall; the 5 buildings are interconnected. At 8:00 PM there's a free fountain show. It's one of the biggest fountains in the world. I recommend you watch this one. The dancing fountain is mesmerizing. In front of one Suntec tower is a mall called Marina Square. This is my favourite because it's not too big and not too small.

**Clark Quay** is a place located beside a river, which is the mouth of Singapore harbour. There are a lot of restaurants and bars in the area. Foreigners like to hang out here. The food is a bit expensive; dinner for 2 persons is about S\$70. However, there is a mall here called Central Mall. Inside there are fast food chains like McDonald's, Pizza Hut, etc. When we come here, we eat inside the mall and stroll outside feel the sea breeze. What I highly recommend though is the boating ride here; it's a 30-minute cruise around this area up to the Merlion and Esplanade Building. Boating per head is S\$13. It's worth it.

**Orchard Road is famous for shopping purposes, so that is called "Shopping capital".** There are lots of mall's A newly opened building called "Ion" has the biggest Louis Vitton store in Southeast Asia.

---

**Botanical Garden:**

---

This place is for plant lovers. The place is huge; all kinds of orchids are here. But there's no MRT station nearby. You will have to get out of Orchard MRT station, then take a cab

to Botanical Garden. Taxi fare is much higher by 35% during peak hours (7:00-9:00 AM and 5:00-8:00 PM).

This is to discourage passengers from taking taxis at peak hours to decongest the road. It's also much higher after midnight because drivers are working overtime. You can use credit card in paying. They also issue receipt. But as much as possible, avoid taking the taxi because it's expensive. When you get lost, tell the driver to take you to the nearest MRT station. From there, take the MRT to your destination.

**Mustafa**, It's the name of the shopping mall located at Little India. This is the place of the Indians. Come here on a Sunday and you will be surprised to see how many they are in Singapore. Mustafa is a 24-hour shopping mall. Everything you need is here. Even at 3:00 in the morning, the mall is packed with people. Perfumes are really cheap there.

Tourism in Singapore is a major industry and contributor to the Singaporean economy, attracting 13,171,303 tourists in 2011, over twice Singapore's total population. Its cultural attraction can be attributed to its cultural diversity that reflects its colonial history and Chinese, Malay, Indian and Arab ethnicities.

It is also environmentally friendly, and maintains natural and heritage conservation programs. Along with this, it also has one of the world's lowest crime rates. As English is the dominant one of its four official languages, it is generally easier for tourists to understand when speaking to the local population of the country, for example, when shopping. Transport in Singapore exhaustively covers most, if not all public venues in Singapore, which increases convenience for tourists. This includes the well-known Mass Rapid Transit (MRT) system.

A total visitor day was a record 44.9 million days, a growth of 17.1%, or an average of 3.86 days per visitor. 22.3% of visitors were day-trippers (less than one day), 19.7% stayed for one day, 17.6% stayed for two days, 14.7% for three days, and the rest for 4 days and above. 76.0% of visitors arrived by air, 10.9% by sea, and 13.2% by land. The largest age group of visitors was from 25-34 years old at 22.7% of visitors, followed by 21.8% for those aged 35-44 and 17.9% for those from 45-54 years old.

Over half (53%) of visitors came from the five biggest markets, namely Indonesia (2,305,149), People's Republic of China (1,171,337), Malaysia (1,036,918), Australia (880,486) and India (828,903). Other major markets include the Philippines (544,344), Japan (528,817), the United Kingdom (461,714), Thailand (430,022) and the United States of America (416,990).

Singapore Tourism Board promotes a variety of events all year round for tourists. Some of the anchor events are the Chingay Parade, Singapore Arts Festival and Singapore Garden Festival. The Singapore Food festival is held every July to celebrate Singapore's cuisine.

The many changes to the four main sections of the city at night include:

- **Orchard Road:** Vibrant building facades that would jazz up shopping experiences, funky touches such as street seating that changes colours when someone sits down and trees that are brightly lit to promote Singapore as a Garden City.
- **Singapore River:** This includes Clarke Quay and Boat Quay. "Jellyfish" lights would float in the river at Boat Quay. Banks and walls of the river would be illuminated, adding to ambience, and brightly lit-up river-taxis. Underpass along the stretch of 3 km would be lit up with various designs and murals.
- **Bras Basah and Bugis:** Highlighting gateways and focal entry points with innovative light-integrated sculptures and markers would increase the feeling that a person is in a fun and vibrant entertainment hub. There would be more luminous signboards, 3D "art-vertisements" and animations on walls. Well-designed neon advertisements would also be put up.
- **CBD and Marina Bay:** This area is the centre-piece of the whole project. There would be white street lights, instead of the current orange-yellow, to help make people feel that the place is more of an ultra-modern financial hub. There would be the lighting plan of the city skyline, Marina Bay Financial Centre and Integrated Resort. Lights on skyscrapers would also change time to time, with music in the streets and water shows by the bay to add more life and vibrancy.

---

## **11.7 TOP 10 PLACES IN SINGAPORE:**

---

---

### **1. Sentosa Island:**

---

Sentosa Island includes three beaches, resorts, amusement parks, the Universal Studios theme park, the largest marine life park in the world and a casino. Beach lovers can enjoy exciting games and sea sports along the 3.2-km of beautiful, sandy beaches of Siloso, Palawan and Tanjong.

In addition, historic forts, nature walks and an amazing variety of foods: Chinese, Italian, French, Japanese and Australian can all be found. The Crane Dance at Resort World Sentosa is a major attraction as is the high-end shopping and excellent entertainment.

---

### **2. Singapore Zoo:**

---

The Singapore Zoo features a much heralded after dark ride or walk through the zoo to view 1000 nocturnal animals in their natural habitats and a Creature of the Night Show.

Daytime attractions include the world's largest collection of captive orangutans and show that include Elephants at Work or Play, Splash Safari and Rainforest Fights Back.

**3. Flight Experience Singapore:** Virtually fly a plane to more than 20,000 worldwide airports, with a state-of-the-art Boeing 737-800NG cockpit, fully curved 180-degree high-definition visuals and high-fidelity sound. A qualified instructor will give you as much or as little guidance you need.

**Children's Programs:** Flying Start is designed to educate as well as entertain children as young as 4 years old in an ideal environment for engagement. Children not only learn about the many facets of aviation but all get to fly our Boeing 737 simulator as the captain of our aircraft.

**Corporate Entertainment:** Flight Experience, Singapore provides an amazing venue for Product launches, training nights, client entertainment and even Team Building. With our world-class location at the Singapore Flyer, the biggest observation wheel in the world, surrounded by function rooms and great restaurants, there is no better place to impress.

**Pilot training:** Flight Experience simulators are approved by the Civil Aviation Safety Authority (CASA) as a Category B Synthetic Trainer.

Located at The Singapore Flyer, the world's largest observation wheel and only a stone's throw from the CBD, our store is extremely busy and caters for everyone - from the complete novice on their maiden flight to professional pilots gaining familiarity on our Boeing 737NG Flight Simulator. As the first Flight Experience to land in Asia, our store has been open since February 2008, and since that time we've flown thousands of happy customers to countless destinations around the world. Flight Experience uses a Boeing 737 NG flight simulator which gives clients the opportunity to experience flying a modern jet airliner from the captain's seat, with the aid of a Qualified Instructor. It is about as close as it gets to the real thing.

---

#### **4. Asian Civilizations' Museum:**

---

The Asian Civilizations Museum is an institution which forms a part of the three museums of the National Museum of Singapore. It is one of the pioneering museums in the region to specialize in pan-Asian cultures and civilizations. The museum specializes in the material history of China, South East Asia, South Asia and West Asia, from which the diverse ethnic groups of Singapore trace their ancestry.

---

#### **5. Buddha Tooth Relic Temple and Museum:**

---

This interesting four-story temple was completed in 2007. Inside, visitors will find among other things a 27-foot of Buddha statue at the main hall, one of the Buddha Shakyamuni's teeth on the fourth floor and a pagoda on the roof. The temple is built in an architectural

style based on the Buddhist mandala and integrated with the art culture of Buddhism in the Tang dynasty. The Buddha Tooth Relic Temple and Museum is a Buddhist temple and museum complex located in the Chinatown district of Singapore. The temple is based on the Tang dynasty architectural style and built to house the tooth relic of the historical Buddha. The ground breaking ceremony was conducted on 13 March 2005. Costing S\$62 million and 2 years later, a soft launch was held to coincide with the 2007 Vesak day celebration." It is claimed that the relic of Buddha from which it gains its name was found in 1980 in a collapsed stupa in Myanmar. Since opening, the temple has become a popular attraction within Chinatown. Simple vegetarian fare is served in the basement of the temple, though donations are accepted. Lined with deities and prayer stations you can experience a live prayer service or visit the garden on the top floor.

---

**6. Boat Quay:**

---

Boat Quay is a historical quay in Singapore which is situated upstream from the mouth of the Singapore River. Shop houses on it have been carefully conserved and now house various restaurant, bars and pubs.

---

**7. Jurong Bird Park:**

---

Jurong Bird Park not only houses 600 species of exotic birds, the comical parrot circus and the birds of prey in the King of the Skies show, it also includes the Penguin Coast which is home to six varieties of penguins in an exhibit resembling a ship with both indoor and outdoor interactive exhibits.

---

**8. Mount Faber:**

---

Mount Faber is a hill about 105 metres (344 ft.) in height in Singapore, located near the Bukit Merah planning area in the central region. It overlooks the Telok Blangah area, and the western parts of the central Asia. The summit is accessible by road, but there are many footpaths leading up the hill.

It is a frequent tourist destination, as it provides a panoramic view of the increasingly dense central business district within the central area. Its slope includes a tower that is part of the Singapore cable car system that connects to Harbour front and Sentosa. It is accessible from the Harbour Front MRT Station.

---

**9. Bath Culture Foot Therapy:**

---

At Bath Culture, the timeless art of inspiring health and inner well-being has been perfected. Warm up your body with a soothing foot bath served in a traditional wooden tub, ideal after a hard day's work. Combining herbal remedies and century-old traditions,

our foot baths use natural ingredients like black plum, fresh milk and green tea for its curative effects.

Followed by an oriental foot massage, feel your muscles being kneaded and the tension seep away from your body as you drift off to soothing oriental music and enter a realm of blissful happiness and total relaxation. Bath Culture Foot Therapy is designed to refresh and rejuvenate your spirit as well as your physical being. Nestled in Chinatown in a cozy corner off Temple Street, Bath Culture Foot Therapy combines herbal remedies and century-old traditions, soothing oriental music and ambience for a tension releasing foot massage in a traditional wooden tub. Footbath, foot, neck and shoulder massage bundles are available.

---

**10. Cookery Magic:**

---

An excellent way to experience the culture and cooking methods of Singapore, the Cookery Magic cooking class is housed in an authentic Singapore Home. More than a cooking class, teacher Ruksana explains interesting tidbits about the history and medicinal purposes of the ingredients used in cooking as well as lore about Singapore itself. Small, classes, delicious recipes you will eat afterwards. With all that Singapore has to offer, it is not easy to limit yourself to just ten places to visit. However, if you have just a short time to visit, this list will give you plenty of memories to take away from your visit to Singapore.

---

**Check Your Progress:**

---

- Write a short note on variety of tourism products in Singapore.
- What are the tourist attractions of Singapore?
- Make a list of top 10 biggest cities of Singapore.
- Indicate the 10 biggest cities in the maps of Singapore.
- Indicate the top 10 places to visit in the map of Singapore.

---

**11.8 LETS UP SUM UP:**

---

This unit gives ideas about the brief history of Singapore. After going through this unit, we have understood that which are the important cities, their geographical location, culture, environment, history, economy and government etc. We came to know the major attractions / tourist destination and their different dimensions in the country. This unit gives complete information that makes Singapore a most preferred destination all over the world.

This unit ends with the description of top places to visit in Singapore, which help to choose a destination as per the interest of the tourists.

---

**11.9 CLUES TO ANSWERS:**

---

- Refer Sec. 11.4
- Refer Sec. 11.7
- Refer Sec. 11.5
- Refer Sec. 11.5
- Refer Sec. 11.7

---

**REFERENCES:**

---

- Leitch Lepoer, Barbara (1989). Singapore, Shonan: Light of the South. Library of Congress Country Studies. Washington, D.C: Government printing office. Retrieved 29 January 2011.
- "Country profile: Singapore". *BBC News*. 15 July 2009. Retrieved 22 April 2010.
- "Singapore country specific information". U.S. Department of State. 19 March 2010.
- The Currency History of Singapore "The Currency History of Singapore" (Press release). Monetary Authority of Singapore. 9 April 2007. Retrieved 22 April 2010.
- Year Book of Statistics, Singapore. Singapore Tourism Board.
- Welfare in Singapore: Singapore government response". *The Economist* (London). 17 February 2010.
- Census of Population. Singapore Department of Statistics. 2010. Retrieved 2 July 2011.
- Key annual indicators, Singapore Department of Statistics. 2011. Retrieved 2 July 2011.

**Unit-12****Iran- History, Variety of Tourism Products, Ten Biggest Cities,  
Important Tourism Attractions, Top 10 Tourist Attractions**

---

**Structure:**

**12.1 Objectives**

**12.2 Introduction**

**12.3 History of Iran**

**12.4 Variety of Tourism Products in Iran**

**12.5 Iran's Ten Biggest Cities**

**12.6 Tourism Resources in Iran**

**12.7 Lets up Sum Up**

**12.8 Clues to Answers**

---

**12.1 OBJECTIVES:**

---

The aim of this unit is to provide information of Iran, Tourism point of view. This unit will guide to the student about the Geographical location and all Tourism aspects of Iran, who attract not only the domestic tourists but also the foreign tourists in terms of tourism receipts and tourist arrivals. After going through Unit 13 on Iran, You will understand the following:

- Geographical location of the country
- Historical richness of the Country
- Importance of Culture in development of Tourism
- Characteristics of Tourism industry in Iran
- Natural attractions in the Country
- Important tourist cities in the Country
- Top tourist attractions of the Country

---

**12.2 INTRODUCTION:**

---

Unit 13, makes an effort to gives the idea to the students about the Iran as a tourist destination and help them to understand the various dimensions of the Tourism attractions of the country. This unit attempts to through the light on the important cities, Geographical aspects, Attractions (Natural and Man-made), culture and its all aspects, environment, history, economy, government etc. in Iran. Some interesting facts about Iran:

- **Name:** Islamic Republic of Iran
- **Motto:** Independence, Freedom, Islamic Republic
- **Population:** 75,149,669 (2012 Census)
- **Capital:** Tehran
- **Language:** Persian
- **Religion:** Islam
- **Government:** Unitary Islamic Republic
- **Currency:** Iranian Rial (IRR)

---

**12.3 HISTORY OF IRAN:**

---

A large country strategically located in the Middle East region, between the Gulf of Oman, the Persian Gulf, and the Caspian Sea; Iran is situated both in the northern hemisphere and east of Greenwich meridian on 25-40 degree lat and 43-63 degree long. It is bordered by Iraq to the west, Turkey, Armenia, and Azerbaijan to the northwest, Turkmenistan to the northeast, Afghanistan and Pakistan to the southeast. Iran is the eighteenth largest country in the world, with an area of 1,648,195 km<sup>2</sup> (636,372 sq mi). Its area roughly equals

that of the United Kingdom, France, Spain, and Germany combined, or somewhat more than the US state of Alaska.

Iran currently ranks 68th in tourism revenues worldwide. Iran with attractive natural and historical sites is rated among the 10 most touristic countries in the world in terms of its history. The landscape of Iran is diverse, providing a range of activities from hiking and skiing in the Alborz Mountains, to beach holidays by the Persian Gulf and the Caspian Sea. Over the next five years a number of tourism-friendly infrastructure projects will be undertaken on the Persian Gulf island of Kish , which at present attracts around 1m visitors per year, the majority of whom are Iranian.

Before the Iranian revolution and the subsequent Iran-Iraq War, tourism was characterized by significant numbers of visitors traveling to Iran for its diverse attractions, boasting cultural splendors and a diverse and beautiful landscape suitable for a range of activities. Tourism declined dramatically during the Iran-Iraq war in the 1980s.

Since the Iranian revolution in 1979, the majority of visitors to Iran have been religious pilgrims and businesspeople. Official figures do not distinguish between those travelling to Iran for business and those coming for pleasure, and they also include a large number of Diaspora Iranians returning to visit their families in Iran or making pilgrimages to holy Shia sites near Mashhad and elsewhere. Domestic tourism in Iran is one of the largest in the world. Despite the international tensions, the government continues to project strong rises in visitor numbers and tourism revenue over the forecast period, and to talk of projects to build an additional 100 hotels, for example, to expand its currently limited stock.

Iran officially the Islamic Republic of Iran is a country in Western Asia. The name "Iran ", which in Persian means "Land of the Aryans", has been in native use since the Sassanian era, in antiquity. It came into use internationally in 1935, before which the country was known to the Western world as Persia. Both "Persia" and "Iran" are used interchangeably in cultural contexts; however, "Iran" is the name used officially in political contexts.

The 18th-largest country in the world in terms of area at 1,648,195 km<sup>2</sup> (636,372 sq mi). It is a country of particular geopolitical significance owing to its location in three spheres of Asia (West, Central, and South). Iran is bordered on the north by Armenia, Azerbaijan and Turkmenistan. As Iran is a littoral state of the Caspian Sea, which is an inland sea, Kazakhstan and Russia are also Iran's direct neighbors to the north. Iran is bordered on the east by Afghanistan and Pakistan, on the south by the Persian Gulf and the Gulf of Oman, on the west by Iraq and on the northwest by Turkey. Tehran is the capital, the country's largest city and the political, cultural, commercial and industrial center of the nation. Iran is a regional power, and holds an important position in international energy security and world economy as a result of its large reserves of petroleum and natural gas.

Iran has the second largest proven natural gas reserves in the world and the fourth largest proven petroleum reserves.

Iran is home to one of the world's oldest civilization. The first dynasty in Iran formed during the Elamite kingdom in 2800 BC. The Iranian Medes unified Iran into an empire in 625 BC. They were succeeded by the Iranian Achaemenid Empire, the Hellenic Seleucid Empire and two subsequent Iranian empires, the Parthians and the Sassanids, before the Muslim conquest in 651 AD. Iranian post-Islamic dynasties and empires expanded the Persian language and culture throughout the Iranian plateau. Early Iranian dynasties which re-asserted Iranian independence included the Tahirids, Saffarids, Samanids and Buyids.

Iran is a founding member of the NAM, OIC and OPEC. The political system of Iran, based on the 1979 constitution, comprises several intricately connected governing bodies. The highest state authority is the Supreme Leader. Shia Islam is the official religion and Persian is the official language.

---

#### **12.4 VARIETY OF TOURISM PRODUCTS:**

---

Iran as old as history itself inherits one of the most ancient civilizations of the planet. Throughout the years, its culture has influenced different parts of the globe from the Nile River to the heart of Europe. For many years, people from all over the world have traveled the historic trade route of Silk Road, marveling at the varied glory of the Persian Empire's great civilization.

To visit Iran is a unique experience, the experience of being in the cradle of a great culture and civilization. Boasting three millennia of recorded history, Iran enjoys a great legacy of ruins and hallowed stonework.

The Iranian style of architecture is distinctive and creative. Persepolis and the rare impressive edifices of Isfahan as well as the Air Traps of the central desert region are the hallmarks of the Iranian unique architecture. If you simply want to walk in the footsteps of some history's most outstanding figures, this historic land is blessed with some of the best.

Along with its splendid history and culture, Iran is a diverse land and has a great variety of geographical environment which offers a sense of paradise for all of the nature lovers.

Iran's climatic diversity is such that some tourists can enjoy winter sports in the mountains while others can bathe in the warm waters of the southern shores, both within a few hours drive from the main cities.

- *Eco tourism*- Various sites and places are popular for ecotourism in Italy. Valasht lake, Sald lake, Cave Ali Sadr, Damavand Mountain, Anzali Lagoon, Abr forests, Shevi

waterfalls, Caspian Sea beaches, Rose water extraction in Ghamsar, Shadegan lagoon, Sarigol protected zones are popular for ecotourism.

- **Desert Tourism-** Desert safari with ethnic experience is very popular in Iran as desert tourism.
- **Cultural and Heritage Tourism:** Iran has very popular Cultural and Heritage sites to promote this tourism. Soltaniyeh Dome, Persepolis, St. Thaddeus Monastery, Historical city of Masouleh, Zanjan Congregational Mosque, Menar jonban (Isfahan), Naghsh-e-jahan, Kalporgan village etc. are the popular heritage sites of Iran.
- **Religious Tourism-** *Shrine of Hazrat –e Masumeh, Holy Shrine of Imam Reza, Chak Chakoo Fire Tmple, Goharshad mosque, Danial e-Nabi Mausoleum etc.*, are the religious sites in Iran.

---

## 12.5 IRAN'S TEN BIGGEST CITIES:

---

---

### 1. Tehran:

---

Tehran is the capital of Iran and Tehran Province. With a population of about 8,300,000 and about 14 million metropolitan area, it is Iran's largest city and urban area, and one of the largest cities in Western Asia

In the 20th and 21st centuries, Tehran has been the subject to mass migration of people from all around Iran. The city is home to many historic Mosques, Churches, Synagogues and Zoroastrian fire temples. Contemporary Tehran is a modern city featuring many structures, of which the Azadi (freedom) Tower and the Milad Tower have come to be symbols of Tehran itself. Tehran is ranked 29th in the world by the population of its metropolitan areas. Iran's history, the capital has been moved many times, and Tehran is the 32<sup>nd</sup> national capital of Iran although it has been Iran's capital for about 220 years. Persian is the city's native tongue, spoken by roughly 98% of the population. The majority of people in Tehran identify themselves as Persians. In pre-Islamic and early Islamic times, Tehran was called Ray (which in the Avesta occurs in the form of Ragma).

Tehran historically was known as *Ray* which is etymologically connected to the Old Persian and Avesta Rhaga. The city was a major area of the Iranian speaking Medes and Achaemenids. In the Zoroastrian Avesta Widewdat, Ragma is mentioned as the twelfth sacred place created by Ahura-Mazda.

There is also a shrine there, dedicated to commemorate Princess Shahr Banu, eldest daughter of the last ruler of the Sassanid Empire. She gave birth to Ali Zayn al Abidin, the fourth holy Imam of the Shia faith. This was through her marriage to Husayn Ibn Ali,

the grandson of Muhammad, the prophet of Islam. A nearby mountain is also named after her. However, some sources attribute the shrine to the goddess of water and fertility, Anahita, claiming it was renamed in Islamic times to protect it from any possible harm after the conversion of Iranians to Islam.

---

**2. Mashhad:**

---

Mashhad is the second largest city in Iran. It is located 850 kilometres (530 mi) east of Tehran at the center of the Razavi Khorasan Province close to the borders of Afghanistan and Turkmenistan. Its population was 2,772,287 at the 2011 population census. It was a major oasis along the ancient Silk Road connecting with Merv in the East.

Mashhad is the hometown of some of the most significant Iranian literary figures and artists such as Mehdi Akhavan -Sales the famous contemporary poet and Mohammad-Reza Shajarian, the traditional Iranian singer and composer. Mashhad is also known as the city of Ferdowsi, the Iranian poet of Shahnameh, which is considered to be the national epic of Iran. Ferdowsi and Akhavan Sales are both buried in Tus, an ancient city that is considered to be the main origin of the current city of Mashhad.

In Arabic, the name Mashhad means the place of martyrdom. The place where Imam Reza - the eighth Imam of Shia Muslims - was martyred and so his shrine was placed.

---

**3. Karaj:**

---

Karaj is a city in and the capital of Karaj country, Alborz province, Iran .It is the fourth-largest city in Iran after Tehran, Mashhad and Isfahan. It is situated 20 kilometres (12 mi) west of Tehran at the foothills of the Alborz Mountains. However, the city is increasingly becoming an extension of metropolitan Tehran. Karaj is mostly famous because of its academic and educational complexes along with tourist attractions.

The economical base for Karaj is its proximity to Tehran, where transportation of products between the capital and the Caspian Sea is central. Chemicals, fertilizers and processed agricultural goods are also produced here.

The majority of the population of the city is composed of ethnic Persians who are natives to the city but there are also a minority of Persianized Lurs, Persianized Azarbaijanis and Persianized Kurds.

---

**4. Isfahan:**

---

Isfahan is the capital of Isfahan province in Iran, located about 340 km south of Tehran. It has a population of 1,583,609 and is Iran's third largest city after Tehran and Mashhad.

The Isfahan metropolitan area had a population of 3,430,353 in the 2006 Census, the second most populous metropolitan area in Iran after Tehran.

The cities of Zarrinshahr, Fooladshahr and Najafabad, Se-deh, Shahin-shahr, Mobarakeh, Falavarjan and Chiarmahin all constitute the metropolitan city of Isfahan. Isfahan is located on the main north-south and east-west routes crossing Iran, and was once one of the largest cities in the world. It flourished from 1050 to 1722, particularly in the 16th century under the Safavid dynasty, when it became the capital of Persia for the second time in its history. Even today, the city retains much of its past glory. It is famous for its Islamic architecture, with many beautiful boulevards, covered bridges, palaces, mosques, and minarets. This led to the Persian proverb "*Esfahan nesf-e jahan ast*" (Isfahan is half of the world).

The Naghsh-e-Jahan Square in Isfahan is one of the largest city square in the world and an outstanding example of Iranian and Islamic architecture. It has been designated by UNESCO as a World Heritage site. The city also has a wide variety of historic monuments and is known for the paintings and history.

---

**5. Tabriz:**

---

Tabriz is the fourth largest city and one of the historical capitals of Iran and the capital of East Azerbaijan province. Situated at an altitude of 1,350 meters at the junction of the Quru River and Aji River, it was the second largest city in Iran until the late 1960s, one of its former capitals, and residence of the crown prince under the Qajar dynasty. The city has proven extremely influential in the country's recent history. Tabriz is located in a valley to the north of the long ridge of the volcanic cone of Sahand, South of the Eynali Mountain. The valley opens out into a plain that slopes gently down to the northern end of Lake Urmia, 60 km to the west. With cold winters and temperate summers the city is considered a summer resort.

Tabriz is the fourth most populous city in Iran after Tehran, Mashhad and Esfahan, and is also a major Iranian heavy industrial and manufacturing center. Some of these industries include automobile, machine tools, oil and petrochemical and cement production. With a rich history, Tabriz contains many historical monuments, but repeated devastating earthquakes and several invasions during frequent wars have substantially damaged many of them.

---

**6. Shiraz:**

---

Shiraz is the fifth most populous city of Iran and the capital of Fars province. Shiraz is located in the southwest of Iran on the Roodkhaneye Khoshk (Dry River) seasonal river. It has a moderate climate and has been a regional trade center for over a thousand years. It is regarded as one of the oldest provinces of ancient Persia.

Shiraz is known as the city of poets, literature, wine and flowers. It is also considered by many Iranians to be the city of gardens, due to the many gardens and fruit trees that can be seen in the city. Shiraz has had major Jewish and Christian communities. The crafts of Shiraz consist of inlaid mosaic work of triangular design; silver-ware; pile carpet-weaving and weaving of kilim, called *gilim* and *jajim* in the villages and among the tribes.

---

**7. Qom:**

---

Qom is a city in Iran. It lies 156 kilometres (97 mi) by road southwest of Tehran and is the capital of Qom Province. It is situated on the banks of the Qom River. Qom is considered holy by Shi'a Islam, as it is the site of the shrine of Fatema Maesume, sister of Imam 'Ali ibn Musa Rida' (Persian *Imam Reza*, 789–816 AD). The city is the largest center for Shi'a scholarship in the world, and is a significant destination of pilgrimage.

Geography Qom is counted as one of the focal centers of the Shi'a both in Iran and around the globe. Since the revolution the clerical population has risen from around 25,000 to more than 45,000 and the nonclerical population has more than tripled to about 700,000. Substantial sums of money in the form of alms and Islamic taxes flow into Qom to the ten Marja-i-taqlid or "Source of Imitation" that reside there. The number of seminary schools in Qom is now over 50, and the number of research institutes and libraries somewhere near 250.

Qom's proximity to Tehran Iran's capital, has allowed the clerical establishment easy access to monitor the affairs and decisions of state. Many grand ayatollahs hold offices in both Tehran and Qom; many people simply commute between the two cities as they are only 156 km apart.

South East of Qom is the ancient city of Kashan. Directly south of Qom lie the towns of Delijan, Mahallat, Naraq, Kahak, and Jasb. The surrounding area to the east of Qom is populated by Tafresh, Saveh and Ashtian and Jafarieh.

---

**8. Ahwaz:**

---

Ahwaz is a city in and the capital of Khuzestan province, Iran. Ahwaz is built on the banks of the Karun River and is situated in the middle of Khuzestan Province. The city has an average elevation of 20 meters above sea level.

---

**9. Rasht:**

---

Rasht is a city in and the capital of Gilan Province, Iran. At the 2012 census, its population was 622,209. Rasht is the largest city on Iran's Caspian Sea coast. It is a major trade center between Caucasia, Russia and Iran using the port of Bandar-e-Anzail. Rasht is also a

major tourist center with the resort of Masouleh in the adjacent mountains and the beaches of Caspian as some of the major attractions.

Historically, Rasht was a major transport and business centre which connected Iran to Russia and Europe, and was therefore entitled the "Gate of Europe ". The city has a history that goes back to the 13th century but its modern history dates back to the Safavid era during which Rasht was a major centre of the silk trade with numerous textile workshops. The name Rasht comes most plausibly from the verb *Reshtan*, weaving. Rasht has, along with regions around Tabriz and Teheran, one of the earliest industry plants during the last quarter of the 19th century, prominently in fields such as fishing, caviar production, the Caspian Sea oil pipeline construction and textiles. During the 20th century, until the mid-70s, Gilan and the Rasht region was the third-ranking industrial city in Iran by number of workers and per capita productivity. It lost its cultural and industrial status to a large extent after the 1970s.

---

**10. Kermanshah:**

---

Kermanshah is a city in and the capital of Kermanshah province, Iran. The language spoken by the people is Kermanshahi Persian; Kermanshahi Kurdish and Laki. Kermanshah is located 525 km from Tehran in the western part of Iran. Kermanshah has a moderate and mountainous climate. The religion of most of the people is Shia Islam. Given its antiquity, attractive landscapes and rich culture, Kermanshah is considered as one of the cradles of prehistoric cultures such as Neolithic villages. According to archaeological surveys and excavation, Kermanshah area has been occupied by prehistoric people since the Lower Paleolithic period, and continued to later Paleolithic periods till late pleistocene period. The Lower Paleolithic evidence consists of some handaxes found in the Gakia area to the east of the city.

---

**12.6 TOURISM RESOURCES IN IRAN:**

---

Iran's Cultural Heritage, Tourism and Handicrafts Organization is responsible for the establishment, development and operation of tourism facilities in Iran, planning for the repair or extension of tourism facilities through direct investment or providing loans to the private sector or entering into partnership with the private sector, issuing licenses and supervising the establishment and administration of hotels and restaurants and travel agencies and qualification and rating of these units. Investment in Iran's free trade zones are exempt from taxes for up to 20 years.

Area considered for further expansion in the tourism sector in Iran are eco tourism, coastlines, restoration of historical relics, handcraft township, and health tourism (e.g. water therapy). 30,000 people come to Iran each year to receive medical treatment (2012).

Officials state that Iran has in recent years earned about US\$1bn a year from tourism. Close to 1.8% of national employment is generated in the tourism sector. Weak advertising, unstable regional conditions, a poor public image in some parts of the world, and absence of efficient planning schemes in the tourism sector have all hindered the growth of tourism.

Iran's '20-Year Vision' document projects investment of over \$32 billion in the country's tourism sector and targets 20 million tourists by 2025.

In order to encourage domestic and foreign direct investment in this sector, the 50 % tax exemption previously granted to tourism enterprises has been extended to include five-star hotels. Tariffs for utilities comply with industrial ones.

---

**Imam Square, Isfahan:**

---

Isfahan contains some of the world's most beautiful Islamic monuments. The city's moment of glory came in the 17th century when the town was made the capital of the Safavid Empire by Shah Abbas the Great. At this time some of the most stunning Islamic architecture in the world was created - buildings that, amongst other things, served as the inspiration for the Taj Mahal. The Imam (Shah) Square is the glory of the city and contains the exquisite Masjid-e-Imam (Shah Mosque), the Sheikh Lotfollah Mosque with its stunning-coloured tiles, the Ali Qapu Palace, and the Qaisarrieh Bazaar - one of the most exotic in the Middle East.

---

**Persepolis:**

---

Persepolis is one of the world's most magnificent archaeological sites. Known as Parsa to the ancient Persians, this site was the ceremonial capital of Iran's Achaemenian kings from the time of Darius the Great (reign 521 to 485) for more than 200 years until its destruction by Alexander the Great in 330 B.C. Each Spring the representatives from the subject nations of the Persian empire gathered at Persepolis to pay homage and bring tribute to the King of Kings. The existing remains consist of enormous stone columns with elaborate bases; strange capitals representing both powerful and mythical beasts; stone door and window jambs; and facades and staircases, many with fine bas-reliefs.

---

**Bridges of Isfahan:**

---

Isfahan also boasts some of the most beautiful bridges in the world, among them the Khajou, the Sio-se-Pol and Shahrestan, the oldest of the Isfahan bridges. The bridges span the Zayandeh River which separates Isfahan from the suburb of New Julfa. A walk along the Zayandeh River in the late afternoon, crossing the bridges as you go, is one of the most memorable Iran travel experiences.

---

**Old City of Yazd:**

---

Sandwiched between two deserts, this isolated oasis town offers the visitor one of the best examples of traditional Iranian mudbrick architecture, and is an undoubted highlight of any visit to Iran. Yazd has always been an important commercial centre on the caravan trail between Western and Eastern Iran and home to a prominent Zoroastrian community. The legacy of this rich mix is unforgettable, and includes Zoroastrian "Towers of Silence"; the distinctive Wind Towers or badgirs which dominate the skyline; and some very beautiful Islamic architecture.

---

**Nagash-e-Rostam:**

---

Nagash-e-Rostam is the necropolis of the ancient city of Persepolis and home to four giant rock-cut tombs in the shape of Greek crosses which were built to house the remains of Darius the Great and three of his successors. Below the tombs are a number of Sassanian rock-reliefs including one depicting the defeated Roman emperor Valerian kneeling before the victorious Shahpur I (reign 241 to 272 A.D).

---

**National Museums, Tehran:**

---

The highlight of a visit to the Iranian capital is the opportunity to explore several of its excellent museums, including: the superb Archaeological Museum, with its pre-historic and Islamic sections; the Abguineh Glass Museum; the Carpet and Reza Abbasi Calligraphy museums; and the stunning State Jewels of Iran which houses one of the most fabulous collections of treasures in the world.

---

**Soltanieh:**

---

The small village of Soltanieh was to have been the capital of the great 14th century Il-Khanid ruler of Persia, Oljeitu. Almost nothing remains of this city built on the gassy plains of except the king's stunning egg-shaped blue domed mausoleum - a UNESCO World Heritage Site. The tomb has been described by Professor Pope as 'one of Persia's supreme architectural achievements'.

---

**Bisitun:**

---

Bisitun is one of the most famous sites in Near Eastern archaeology. Here, on a smoothed rock face high up on a cliff is a relief showing Darius the Great (reign 521 to 485) facing a line of royal prisoners with his foot on the body of his principal opponent. A trilingual inscription in Old Persian, Akkadian, and Elamite, tells the dramatic story of Darius' consolidation of power at the start of his reign, and was the "Rosetta Stone" that led to the decipherment of cuneiform script in the 19th century.

*Bisitun*

---

**Chogha Zanbil:**

---

The great Elamite ziggurat of Chogha Zanbil is another UNESCO World Heritage Sites. Built by Untash Gal, King of Elam around 1250 B.C., the temple and tomb complex which once rose to 174 feet over 5 platforms, was the focal point of his city of Dur Untashi, and dedicated to the great god Inshushinak. The town was devastated by the Assyrian king Ashurbanipal in 640 B.C and abandoned. Today, Chogha Zanbil is one of the most complete ziggurats surviving in the world, and its remaining 2.5 levels are undeniably impressive.

---

**Takht-e-Soleiman:**

---

The UNESCO World Heritage Site of Takht-e-Soleiman (Solomon's Throne) is dramatically located high in the mountains of the Iranian province of Azerbaijan. This immensely impressive site was once a great Sassanian religious centre where the Warrior's Fire, one of the four most sacred fires of Zoroastrianism, was kept. Following their coronations the Sassanian kings used to make a pilgrimage here on foot to receive divine investiture at the great fire sanctuary. The walls and the remains of 38 towers built around a 'bottomless' crater lake of intense blue are still standing.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS:**

---

- Write a short note on variety of tourism products in Iran.
- What are the tourist attractions of Iran?
- Make a list of top 10 biggest cities of Iran.
- Indicate the 10 biggest cities in the maps of Iran.
- Indicate the top 10 places to visit in the map of Iran
- What are the Tourism Resources of Iran?

---

**12.8 LETS UP SUM UP:**

---

This unit gives ideas about the brief history of Iran. After going through this unit, we have understood that which are the important cities, their geographical location, culture, environment, history, economy and government etc. We came to know the major attractions / tourist destination and their different dimensions in the country. This unit gives complete information that makes Iran a most preferred destination all over the world.

This unit ends with the description of top places to visit in Iran, which help to choose a destination as per the interest of the tourists.

---

**12.9 CLUES TO ANSWERS:**

---

- Refer Sec. 12.4
- Refer Sec. 12.7
- Refer Sec. 12.5
- Refer Sec. 12.5
- Refer Sec. 12.7
- Refer Sec. 12.6

---

**REFERENCES:**

---

- Travel to Iran. Tourism in Iran, Retrieved 23 January 2008
- Iran Travel And Tourism Forecast", *Economist Intelligence Unit*, August 18, 2008
- Country Profile: Iran, Retrieved 12 February 2008
- Tehran Times: Iran's Foreign tourist arrivals continue to increase. Retrieved February 16, 2012
- Andrew J. Newman, *Safavid Iran: Rebirth of a Persian Empire*, I. B. Tauris (30 March 2006)
- Iran Country Profile. BBC NEWS. Retrieved 8 August 2012.
- Iran 2000 and beyond lecture series, opening address, W. Herbert Hunt, 18 May 2000. Retrieved 1 October 2007..
- The Archaeology of Elam: Formation and Transformation of an Ancient Iranian State - by D. T. Potts, Cambridge University Press, 29/07/1999 - pp. 45-46 -ISBN 0521563585hardback.
- William Bayne Fisher, et al., *The Cambridge History of Iran 4* Published by Cambridge University Press, 1975, ISBN 0-521-20093-8, P.396.
- Iran - Country Brief. Go.worldbank.org. Retrieved 30 January 2010.
- "World Economic Forum: Iran ranks 69<sup>th</sup> out of 139 in global competitiveness". Payvand.com.
- 13 September 2010. Retrieved 18 June 2011.
- Iran could rank fourth in the world in terms of research output in 2018: SCI Mago. Tehran Times, September 22, 2012. Retrieved November 21, 2012.
- Iran scientific savvy 'amazes world'. Presstv.ir. Retrieved 18 June 2011.
- "Iran -A country study". Parstimes.com. Retrieved 18 June 2011.

**Unit-13****South Africa- History, Different Tourism Products, Biggest Cities**

---

**Structure:**

**13.1 Objectives**

**13.2 Introduction**

**13.3 History of South Africa**

**13.4 Variety of Tourism Products in South Africa**

**13.5 South Africa's Ten Biggest Cities**

**13.6 Tourism Resources in South Africa**

**13.7 Top Ten Places in South Africa**

**13.8 Lets up Sum Up**

**13.9 Clues to Answers**

---

**13.1 OBJECTIVES:**

---

The aim of this unit is to provide information of South Africa, Tourism point of view. This unit will guide to the student about the Geographical location and all Tourism aspects of South Africa, who attract not only the domestic tourists but also the foreign tourists in terms of tourism receipts and tourist arrivals. After going through Unit 14 on South Africa, You will understand the following:

- Geographical location of the country
- Historical richness of the Country
- Importance of Culture in development of Tourism
- Characteristics of Tourism industry in South Africa
- Natural attractions in the Country
- Important tourist cities in the Country
- Top tourist attractions of the Country

---

**13.2 INTRODUCTION:**

---

Unit 14, makes an effort to gives the idea to the students about the South Africa as a tourist destination and help them to understand the various dimensions of the Tourism attractions of the country. This unit attempts to through the light on the important cities, Geographical aspects, Attractions (Natural and Man-made), culture and its all aspects, environment, history, economy, government etc. in South Africa. Some interesting facts about South Africa:

- **Name:** Republic of South Africa
- **Motto:** "!ke e: !xarra !ke" Xam) -" Unity in Diversity"
- **Population:** 51,770,560 (2011 census)
- **Capital:** Cape Town
- **Religion:** Christians (80 %)
- **Government:** Constitutional parliamentary Republic
- **Currency:** South African Rand (ZAR)

---

**13.3 HISTORY OF SOUTH AFRICA:**

---

South Africa, officially the Republic of South Africa, is a country located at the southern tip of Africa. It is divided into nine provinces and has 2,798 kilometres (1,739 mi) of coastline. To the north lie the neighbouring countries of Namibia, Botswana and Zimbabwe; to the east are Mozambique and Swaziland; while Lesotho is an enclave surrounded by South African territory. South Africa is the 25<sup>th</sup> largest country in the world by area and the 24<sup>th</sup> most populous country with over 51 million people.

South Africa is a multi-ethnic nation and has diverse cultures and languages. Eleven official languages are recognized in the constitution. Two of these languages are of European origin: English and Afrikaans, a language which originated mainly from Dutch that is spoken by the majority of white and coloured South Africans. Though English is commonly used in public and commercial life, it is only the fifth most-spoken home language. All ethnic and language groups have political representation in the country's constitutional democracy comprising parliamentary Republic; unlike most parliamentary republics, the positions of head of state and head of government are merged in a parliament-dependent President.

About 80% of the South African population is of black African ancestry, divided among a variety of ethnic groups speaking different Bantu language, nine of which have official status. South Africa also contains the largest communities of European, Asian, and racially mixed ancestry in Africa.

South Africa is ranked as an upper-middle income economy by the World Bank. It has the largest economy in Africa and the 28th-largest in the world. By purchasing power parity, South Africa has the 5<sup>th</sup> highest per capita income in Africa. It is considered a newly industrialized country. However, about a quarter of the population is unemployed and lives on less than US\$1.25 a day.

South Africa contains some of the oldest archaeological and human fossil sites in the world. Extensive fossil remains have been recovered from a series of caves in Gauteng Province. The area is a UNESCO World Heritage site and has been termed the Cradle of Humankind.

In Mpumalanga, several stone circles have been found along with the stone arrangement that has been named Adam's Calendar. The Drakensberg Mountains, the highest mountain range in South Africa.

Modern humans have inhabited Southern Africa for at least 170,000 years. At the time of European contact, the dominant indigenous peoples were Bantu-speaking peoples who had migrated from other parts of Africa about one thousand years before. The two major historic groups were the Xhosa and Zulu peoples.

South Africa is located at the southernmost region of Africa, with a long coastline that stretches more than 2,500 km (1,553 mi) and along two oceans (the South Atlantic and the Indian).

At 1,219,912 km<sup>2</sup> (471,011 sq mi), South Africa is the 25th-largest country in the world and is comparable in size to Colombia. Mafadi in the Drakensberg at 3,450 m (11,320 ft) is the highest peak in South Africa.

The interior of South Africa is a vast, flat, and sparsely populated scrubland, the Karoo, which is drier towards the northwest along the Namib Desert. In contrast, the eastern coastline is lush and well-watered, which produces a climate similar to the tropics.

To the north of Johannesburg, the altitude drops beyond the escarpment of the Highveld, and turns into the lower lying Bushveld, an area of mixed dry forest and an abundance of wildlife. East of the Highveld, beyond the eastern escarpment, the Lowveld stretches towards the Indian Ocean. It has particularly high temperatures, and is also the location of extended subtropical agriculture.

South Africa also has one possession, the small sub-Antarctic archipelago of the Prince Edward Islands, consisting of Marion Island (290 km<sup>2</sup>/110 sq mi) and Prince Edward Island (45 km<sup>2</sup>/17 sq mi) (not to be confused with the Canadian province of the same name). South Africa has a generally temperate climate, due in part to being surrounded by the Atlantic and Indian Oceans on three sides, by its location in the climatically milder southern hemisphere and due to the average elevation rising steadily towards the north (towards the equator) and further inland. Due to this varied topography and oceanic influence, a great variety of climatic zones exist. The climatic zones range from the extreme desert of the southern Namib in the farthest northwest to the lush subtropical climate in the east along the Mozambique border and the Indian Ocean. Winters in South Africa occur between June and August.

The extreme southwest has a climate remarkably similar to that of the Mediterranean with wet winters and hot, dry summers, hosting the famous Fynbos biome of shrubland and thicket. This area also produces much of the wine in South Africa. This region is also particularly known for its wind, which blows intermittently almost all year. The severity of this wind made passing around the Cape of Good Hope particularly treacherous for sailors, causing many shipwrecks. Further east on the south coast, rainfall is distributed more evenly throughout the year, producing a green landscape. This area is popularly known as the Garden Route.

The high Drakensberg mountains, which form the south-eastern escarpment of the Highveld, offer limited skiing opportunities in winter. The coldest place in South Africa is Sutherland in the western Roggeveld mountains, where midwinter temperatures can reach as low as -15 °C (5 °F). The deep interior has the hottest temperatures: a temperature of 51.7 °C (125.06 °F) was recorded in 1948 in the Northern Cape Kalahari near Upington, but this temperature is unofficial and was not recorded with standard equipment, the official highest temperature is 48.8 °C (119.84 °F) at Vioolsdrif in January 1993.

South Africa signed the Rio Convention on Biological Diversity on 4 June 1994, and became a party to the convention on 2 November 1995. It has subsequently produced a National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan, which was received by the convention on

7 June 2006. The country is ranked sixth out of the world's seventeen mega diverse countries.

South Africa has a mixed economy with a high rate of poverty and low GDP per capita. Unemployment is high and South Africa is ranked in the top 10 countries in the world for income inequality, measured by the Gini coefficient. Unlike most of the world's poor countries, South Africa does not have a thriving informal economy; according to OECD estimates, only 15% of South African jobs are in the informal sector, compared with around half in Brazil and India and nearly three-quarters in Indonesia. The OECD attributes this difference to South Africa's widespread welfare system. World Bank research shows that South Africa has one of the widest gaps between per capita GNP versus its Human Development Index ranking, with only Botswana showing a larger gap.

South Africa is a popular tourist destination, and a substantial amount of revenue comes from tourism. Illegal immigrants are involved in informal trading. Many immigrants to South Africa continue to live in poor conditions, and the immigration policy has become increasingly restrictive since 1994.

African Indigenous Churches formed the largest of the Christian groups. It was believed that many of the persons who claimed no affiliation with any organized religion adhered to traditional African religion.. There are an estimated 200 000 indigenous traditional healers in South Africa, and up to 60% of South Africans consult these healers, generally called sangomas or inyangas. These healers use a combination of ancestral spiritual beliefs and a belief in the spiritual and medicinal properties of local fauna and flora, commonly known as muti, in order to facilitate healing in clients. Many peoples have syncretic religious practices combining Christian and indigenous influences.

The South African black majority still has a substantial number of rural inhabitants who lead largely impoverished lives. It is among these people that cultural traditions survive most strongly; as blacks have become increasingly urbanised and Westernised, aspects of traditional culture have declined. Members of the middle class, who are predominantly white but whose ranks include growing numbers of black, coloured and Indian people, have lifestyles similar in many respects to that of people found in Western Europe, North America and Australasia.

---

#### **13.4 VARIETY OF TOURISM PRODUCTS:**

---

Tourism is regarded as a modern-day engine of growth and is one of the largest industries globally. In 2012, G20 heads of state recognized tourism as a driver of growth and development, as well as a sector that has the potential to spur global economic recovery.

South Africa has earmarked tourism as a key sector with excellent potential for growth: the government aims to increase tourism's contribution, both direct and indirectly, to the

economy from the 2009 baseline of R189,4 - billion (7.9% of GDP) to R499-billion by 2020 (National Department of Tourism, 2012). Tourism supports one in every 12 jobs in South Africa.

South Africa's spectacular scenery, friendly people, world-class infrastructure make it one of the most desired destinations in the world. The sector was given a massive boost by the successful hosting of the World Cup in 2010, when the country received a record-breaking 8.1-million foreign visitors. Despite tough global economic conditions, tourism grew in 2011, with 8.3-million international tourists.

The regional African tourist market is South Africa's important tourist markets, contributing more than 73% of total tourist arrivals and more than R50-billion in revenue in 2011. Domestic tourism is also an important source of revenue and employment, contributing 52% of total tourism consumption. Cruise and rural tourism are focusing growth areas.

A labour-intensive sector, with a supply chain that links across sectors, tourism is a priority sector in the government's planning and policy frameworks – it is one of the six job drivers of the New Growth Path framework.

The National Tourism Sector Strategy, launched in 2011, aims to ensure the sector realizes its full potential in terms of job creation, social inclusion, services exports and foreign exchange earnings, fostering a better understanding between peoples and cultures, and green transformation.

South Africa plans to grow tourism by allowing travellers to move more freely and efficiently. Measures would include e-visas, regional visa schemes, and visa waiver programmes between key source markets. Tourism service excellence standards have been devised and implemented by the SA Bureau of Standards and the National Department of Tourism.

- **Business tourism:** South Africa is a popular destination for business travellers, who spend on average three times more than their leisure counterparts while crossing over significantly into leisure travel themselves, through tours before or after their business activities and through return trips in subsequent years.

With its first-world infrastructure, balmy climate and breathtaking scenery – not to mention acres of golf courses – South Africa is an ideal location for international congresses and conventions.

The country has well over 1 000 world-class conferences and exhibition venues, ranging from intimate bush hideaways to large-scale, hi-tech convention centres. All of these offers a wealth of leisure activities, side-tours and events: from walking with elephants to first-hand experiences of African culture to luxury shopping and relaxation.

The country has set up the National Conventions Bureau to help it secure more international conferences, an excellent source of foreign tourists and revenue. The conference industry is in 37th place in the International Congress and Convention Association's top-100 list of leading destinations in the world, released in 2012.

- **Cultural tourism:** South Africa is home to diverse cultures, ranging from the Zulus who resisted European conquest to the nomadic San of the Karoo desert. Each culture has evolved its own distinctive art forms, music and traditional rituals, while the descendants of colonial settlers have evolved variations of their European roots.

South Africa's history has been one of confrontation, but is now also known as one of reconciliation. World-class sites have been established to commemorate the country's past and celebrate its new-found unity, while the number and quality of cultural villages, community and township tours has grown dramatically.

- **World Heritage:** We're home to eight World Heritage sites, places of "outstanding value to humanity".

Four of South Africa's eight UNESCO World Heritage sites are cultural sites, while one is a mixed cultural/natural site. These are: Robben Island, the Cradle of Humankind, the Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape, the Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape, and the Khahlamba Drakensberg Park.

- **Eco-tourism:** South Africa's diverse climates range from tropical in the south-east to desert in the central region. The scenery runs the gamut from spectacular mountain ranges to vast grass plains, from coastline to meandering rivers to desert dunes. The country's wildlife is far more varied than just the celebrated "Big Five", and is supported by an extraordinary biological diversity.

Three of South Africa's eight UNESCO World Heritage sites are natural sites, while one is a mixed cultural/natural site. These are the Cape Floral Region, the ISimangaliso Wetland Park, the Vredefort Dome, and the uKhahlamba Drakensberg Park. South Africa is leading the way in one of the boldest cross-border initiatives currently unfolding in southern Africa, the development of transfrontier parks.

- **Wildlife Tourism:** There are 19 national parks, including the world-famous 20 000km<sup>2</sup> Kruger National Park. The country's terrestrial protected areas stand at around 6.9%, according to a World Bank report published in 2012. Marine protected areas make up around 11%. The country's private game lodges range in standard from middle to very up market, with ultra-luxury lodges catering almost exclusively to foreign tourists.

- **Paleo-tourism:** South Africa boasts numerous sites of great archaeological significance. The best known of these are the Sterkfontein, Swartkrans and Kromdraai sites that make up the Cradle of Humankind, one of the world's richest concentrations of hominid fossils.

Others include the Khahlamba Drakensberg Park, host to the largest and most concentrated series of rock art paintings in Africa, and the Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape; site of an ancient and sophisticated African kingdom that long predated European colonization. These are all UNESCO World Heritage sites.

- **Adventure tourism:** Being at the southern tip of a large continent, South Africa offers 3 000 kilometres of coastline along with breathtaking mountains – often side by side. The country's diverse terrain, together with a climate suited to outdoor activities; make it an ideal hunting ground for adrenaline seekers.

South Africa offers world-class climbing, surfing, diving, hiking, horseback safaris, mountain biking, river rafting and just about any other extreme activity you can name, all supported by dedicated operators.

- **Sports tourism:** World-class venues and supporting infrastructure, top international events, and South Africans' passion for sport combine to make the country a huge draw card for sports fans. More than 10% of foreign tourists come to South Africa to watch or participate in sport events, with spectators accounting for 60% to 80% of these arrivals.

There are numerous world-class sporting events on South Africa's calendar every year, such as the Cape Argus Cycle Race and the 89km Comrades marathon. The country has proved that it can successfully pull off the really big events, which have included the 1995 Rugby World Cup, the 2003 Cricket World Cup, and the biggest of them all, the 2010 Fifa World Cup.

- **Wine tourism:** Wine tourism is one of the fastest-growing and most lucrative sectors of the global tourism market. In 2009, wine tourism contributed an estimated R4,3 billion to South Africa's tourism revenue. Wine and gourmet tourism could help the wine industry offset the international volatility it experiences, as well as play a role in terms of South Africa's goal of increasing the geographic spread of tourism.

- **Medical tourism:** Medical tourism, where people seek medical treatment in another country, is a fast-growing sector. Most medical tourists come to South Africa for cosmetic surgery, but the country's skilled surgeons can also provide organ transplants; cardiac, orthopedic and obesity surgery; and dentistry.

- **Rural tourism:** Rural tourism is a priority area for government. The departments of Tourism and Rural Development and Land Reform have developed strategic interventions to allow poor communities better access to revenues generated by the tourism market.

- **Leisure Tourism:** Leisure tourism Thirty-six South African beaches have been awarded *international Blue Flag status* for excelling in safety, cleanliness, the provision of amenities and setting and maintaining environmental standards.

---

**13.5 SOUTH AFRICA'S TEN BIGGEST CITIES:**

---

---

**1. Cape Town, Western Cape:**

---

Renowned as one of the most beautiful cities in the world, this seaside playground has it all. Move over Sydney and San Francisco – the Mother City rules.

---

**2. Johannesburg, Gauteng:**

---

Founded on a gold rush; it's the financial and entertainment epicenter of the country. Jozi rocks in more ways than one.

---

**3. Durban, KwaZulu-Natal:**

---

Durban is a hot destination From its sultry nightlife, weather, beaches and heady cultural mix to its famous curries, Durb's is scorching.

---

**4. Pretoria, Gauteng:**

---

Seemingly stately with numerous international embassies, monuments and museums, this city, is sports-mad with plenty entertainment in theatres, music venues and nightclubs.

---

**5. Port Elizabeth, Eastern Cape**

---

Known as the friendly city, this easy-going bayside metropolis is known for its hospitality and beautiful beaches.

---

**6. Bloemfontein, Free State:**

---

At the heart of the Free State you'll find historic, hospitable Bloemfontein, known as the 'City of Roses'.

---

**7. Nelspruit, Mpumalanga:**

---

Gateway to the Kruger National Park and the world-famous game reserves of Sabi-Sabi, Nelspruit is a thriving lowveld metropolis.

---

**8. Kimberley, Northern Cape:**

---

Founded on diamonds; this historic city is home to the Kimberley mine museum and the Great Hole of Kimberley.

---

**9. Polokwane, Limpopo:**

---

Meaning place of peace, Polokwane opens the way to the Great Limpopo Transfronteir Park and the mystical, eco-adventure landscapes of Vhenda.

---

**10. Pietermaritzburg, KwaZulu-Natal:**

---

This KwaZulu-Natal hinterland city is cherished for its history, colonial character and picturesque countryside.

---

**13.6 TOURISM RESOURCES IN SOUTH AFRICA:**

---

South Africa has lost a large area of natural habitat in the last four decades, primarily due to overpopulation, sprawling development patterns and deforestation during the nineteenth century. South Africa is one of the worst affected countries in the world when it comes to invasion by alien species with many (e.g. Black Wattle, Port Jackson, Hakea, Lantana and Jacaranda) posing a significant threat to the native biodiversity and the already scarce water resources. The original temperate forest found by the first European settlers was exploited ruthlessly until only small patches remained. Currently, South African hardwood trees like Real Yellowwood (*Podocarpus latifolius*), Stinkwood (*Ocotea bullata*), and South African Black Ironwood (*Olea laurifolia*) are under government protection. Statistics from South African National Parks show a record 333 rhinos have been killed in 2010.

---

**Biodiversity of South Africa:**

---

Climate change is expected to bring considerable warming and drying to much of this already semi-arid region, with greater frequency and intensity of extreme weather events such as heat waves, flooding and drought. According to computer generated climate modeling produced by the South African National Biodiversity Institute, parts of southern Africa will see an increase in temperature by about one degree Celsius along the coast to more than four degrees Celsius in the already hot hinterland such as the Northern Cape in late spring and summertime by 2050. The Cape Floral Kingdom, been identified as one of the global biodiversity hotspots, it will be hit very hard by climate change. Drought, increased intensity and frequency of fire and climbing temperatures are expected to push many rare species towards extinction.

It is difficult to know if there is regulation of the term Eco-tourism as well as what a foundation/association/company needs to do to fall into the category of 'eco-travel'. However, there is a non-profit association that represents the private sector of the "incoming tourism industry in South Africa " (which is a large group) called the South African Tourism Services Association (SATSA), they are "dedicated to providing and maintaining the highest possible standards in the tourism industry within South Africa."

SATSA is focused on the accountability, integrity, and quality control of the tourism industry in South Africa as well as with the companies and associations they are connected to.

In addition to SATSA, the website responsibletravel.com partnered with The Times, World Travel Market and Geographical Magazine have established the Responsibility Tourism Awards. The goal of the award is to "recognize individuals, companies and organizations in the travel industry that are making a significant commitment to the culture and economies of local communities and are providing a positive contribution to biodiversity conservation."

---

**National Parks:**

---

In addition to the well-known Kruger National Park, South Africa has a large number of other National Parks to visit.

---

**World Heritage Sites:**

---

South Africa boasts a range of Cultural, historical, archeological and geological sites that are protected under the UNESCO World Heritage sites project.

---

**3.7 TOP 10 PLACES IN SOUTH AFRICA:**

---

---

**1. Cape Town & Cape Peninsula:**

---

Cape Town and the Cape Peninsula up to Cape Point, are famous for scenic beauty; celebrity beaches; Table Mountain; whale-watching; world-class shopping, nightlife, food & wine; and a laid-back atmosphere.

---

**2. The Winelands:**

---

Discover the joys of SA's award-winning wines and cuisine along any of the beautiful Cape wine routes, taking you through green valleys and historic towns.

---

**3. Garden Route:**

---

Known as South Africa's Eden, the famous Garden Route traverses an area rich in natural beauty and charm, attracting adventure-seekers and outdoor enthusiasts.

---

**4. Johannesburg:**

---

South Africa's pulsating African heartbeat is felt in the 'City of Gold' with its endless opportunities for shopping, entertainment, freedom tours and eating out.

---

**5. Kruger National Park:**

---

This world-renowned park of nearly 2 million hectares features 16 ecosystems. Spot the Big Five on a 4x4 game drive or walking safari

---

**6. Durban beachfront:**

---

For those with fun and sun on their minds, SA's sunshine city has something for the whole family - golden beaches, surfing and a marine park.

---

**7. Robben Island:**

---

The island's most famous prisoner, Nelson Mandela, has turned this institute of brutality into a symbol of the triumph of the human spirit over enormous hardship.

---

**8. Soweto:**

---

South Africa's largest and most famous township was a hotbed of anti-apartheid activity. Visit Freedom Struggle sites and eat at a shebeen or township restaurant.

---

**9. Blyde River Canyon Nature Reserve:**

---

Most famous for God's Window, the panoramic splendor of the Blyde River Canyon makes it ideal for scenic drives and hiking trails.

---

**10. Wild Coast:**

---

Rugged and untamed, the Wild Coast offers deserted beaches, dolphins, horseback and hiking trails, cosy hotels, golf, gambling, mystical history, Xhosa heritage and the Hole-in-the-Wall.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS:**

---

- Write a short note on variety of tourism products in South Africa.
- What are the tourist attractions of South Africa?
- Make a list of top 10 biggest cities of South Africa.
- Indicate the 10 biggest cities in the maps of South Africa.
- Indicate the top 10 places to visit in the map of South Africa.

- Give Cultural and natural history of South Africa.

---

**13.8 LETS UP SUM UP:**

---

This unit gives ideas about the brief history of South Africa. After going through this unit, we have understood that which are the important cities, their geographical location, culture, environment, history, economy and government etc. We came to know the major attractions / tourist destination and their different dimensions in the country. This unit gives complete information that makes South Africa a most preferred destination all over the world.

This unit ends with the description of top places to visit in South Africa, which help to choose a destination as per the interest of the tourists.

---

**13.9 CLUES TO ANSWERS:**

---

- Refer Sec. 13.4
- Refer Sec. 13.7
- Refer Sec. 13.5
- Refer Sec. 13.5
- Refer Sec. 13.7
- Refer Sec. 13.3

---

**REFERENCES:**

---

- South Africa Profile. Nti.org. Retrieved 30 October 2011.
- South Africa. *Human Development Report*. United Nations Development Programme. 2006. Retrieved 28 November 2007.
- "South Africa's geography – South Africa.info". Safrica.info. Retrieved 30 October 2011.
- South African National Biodiversity Institute. Sanbi.org. 30 September 2011. Retrieved 30 October 2011.
- *A History of South Africa, Third Edition*. Leonard Thompson. Yale University Press. 1 March 2001. 384 pages. ISBN 0-300-08776-4.
- *South Africa: A Narrative History*. Frank Welsh. Kodansha America. 1 February 1999. 606 pages. ISBN 1-56836-258-7.
- *South Africa in Contemporary Times*. Godfrey Mwakikagile. New Africa Press. February 2008. 260 pages. ISBN 978-0-9802587-3-8.

- *The Atlas of Changing South Africa*. A. J. Christopher. 1 October 2000. 216 pages. ISBN 0-415-21178-6
- *Twentieth-Century South Africa*. William Beinart Oxford University Press 2001, 414 pages, ISBN 0-19-289318-1

---

**Unit-14**  
**Egypt and Kenya**

---

**Structure:**

**14.1 Objectives**

**14.2 Introduction**

**14.3 History of Egypt and Kenya**

**14.4 Variety of Tourism Products in Egypt and Kenya**

**14.5 Ten Biggest Cities of Egypt and Kenya**

**14.6 Tourism Resources in Egypt and Kenya**

**14.7 Top Ten Places in Egypt and Kenya**

**14.8 Lets up Sum Up**

**14.9 Clues to Answers**

---

**14.1 OBJECTIVES:**

---

The aim of this unit is to provide information of Egypt and Kenya, Tourism point of view. This unit will guide to the student about the Geographical location and all Tourism aspects of, Egypt and Kenya who attract not only the domestic tourists but also the foreign tourists in terms of tourism receipts and tourist arrivals. After going through Unit 14 on, Egypt and Kenya You will understand the following:

- Geographical location of the country
- Historical richness of the Country
- Importance of Culture in development of Tourism
- Characteristics of Tourism industry in Egypt and Kenya
- Natural attractions in the Country
- Important tourist cities in the Country
- Top tourist attractions of the Country

---

**14.2 INTRODUCTION:**

---

Unit 14 makes an effort to gives the idea to the students about the tourist destination and help them to understand the various dimensions of the Tourism attractions in Egypt and Kenya. This unit attempts to through the light on the important cities, Geographical aspects, Attractions (Natural and Man-made), culture and its all aspects, environment, history, economy, government etc. in Egypt and Kenya. Some interesting facts about Egypt and Kenya:

<b>Egypt</b>	<b>Kenya</b>
<b>Name:</b> Arab Republic of Egypt	<b>Name:</b> Republic of Kenya
<b>Population:</b> 79,602,000 (2011 estimate)	<b>Population:</b> 43,500,000 (2013 estimate)
<b>Capital:</b> Cairo	<b>Capital:</b> Nairobi
<b>Language:</b> Arabic	<b>Language:</b> Swahili and English
<b>Religion:</b> Christianity	<b>Religion:</b> Christianity
<b>Government:</b> Unitary semi-presidential	<b>Governed republic:</b> Devolved republic
<b>Currency:</b> Egyptian pound (EGP)	<b>Currency:</b> Kenya shilling (KES)

---

**14.3 HISTORY OF EGYPT AND KENYA:**

---

---

**14.3.1 EGYPT'S HISTORY:**

---

Egypt is a transcontinental country spanning the northeast corner of Africa and southwest corner of Asia via a land bridge formed by the Sinai Peninsula. Most of its territory of

1,010,000 square kilometers (390,000 sq mi) lies within North Africa and is bordered by the Mediterranean Sea to the north, the Gaza Strip and Israel to the northeast, the Red Sea to the east, Sudan to the south and Libya to the west.

Egypt is one of the most populous countries in Africa and the Middle East, and the 14th most populated in the world. The great majority of its over 82 million people live near the banks of the Nile River, an area of about 40,000 square kilometers (14,000 sq mi), where the only Arable land is found. The large regions of the Sahara Desert, which constitute most of Egypt's territory, are sparsely inhabited. About half of Egypt's residents live in urban areas, with most spread across the densely populated centres of greater Cairo, Alexandria and other major cities in the Nile Delta.

Egypt has one of the longest histories of any modern state, having been continuously inhabited since the 10th millennium BCE. Its monuments, such as the Giza Pyramid complex and its Great Sphinx, were constructed by its ancient civilization, which was one of the most advanced of its time. Its ancient ruins, such as those of Memphis, Thebes, Karnak, and the Valley of the Kings outside Luxor, are a significant focus of archaeological study and popular interest. Egypt's rich cultural legacy, as well as the attraction of its Red Sea Riviera, has made tourism a vital part of the economy, employing about 12% of the country's workforce.

The economy of Egypt is one of the most diversified in the Middle East, with sectors such as tourism, agriculture, industry and services at almost equal production levels. Egypt is considered to be a middle power, with significant cultural, political, and military influence in the Mediterranean, the Middle East and the Muslim world.

There is evidence of rock carvings along the Nile terraces and in desert oases. In the 10<sup>th</sup> Millennium BC, a culture of hunter-gatherers and fishers was replaced by a grain-grinding culture. Climate changes and/or overgrazing around 8000 BC began to desiccate the pastoral lands of Egypt, forming the Sahara. Early tribal peoples migrated to the Nile River where they developed a settled agricultural economy and more centralized society.

By about 6000 BC, a Neolithic culture rooted in the Nile Valley. During the Neolithic era, several pre-dynastic cultures developed independently in Upper and Lower Egypt. The Badarian culture and the successor Naqada series are generally regarded as precursors to dynastic Egypt. The earliest known Lower Egyptian site, Merimda, predates the Badarian by about seven hundred years. Contemporaneous Lower Egyptian communities coexisted with their southern counterparts for more than two thousand years, remaining culturally distinct, but maintaining frequent contact through trade. The earliest known evidence of Egyptian hieroglyphic inscriptions appeared during the pre-dynastic period on Naqada III pottery vessels, dated to about 3200 BC.

Egypt is bordered by Libya to the west, Sudan to the south, and by the Gaza Strip and Israel to the east. Egypt's important role in geopolitics stems from its strategic position: a

transcontinental nation, it possesses a land bridge (the Isthmus of Suez) between Africa and Asia, traversed by a navigable waterway (the Suez Canal) that connects the Mediterranean Sea with the Indian Ocean by way of the Red Sea.

Apart from the Nile Valley, the majority of Egypt's landscape is desert, with a few Oases scattered about. Winds create prolific sand dunes that peak at more than 100 feet (30 m) high. Egypt includes parts of the Sahara Desert and of the Libyan Desert.. These deserts that protected the Kingdom of the Pharaohs from western threats were referred to as the "red land" in ancient Egypt.

Towns and cities include Alexandria, the second largest city; Aswan; Asyut; Cairo, the modern Egyptian capital and largest city; El-Mahalla El-Kubra; Giza, the site of the Pyramid of Khufu; Hurghada; Luxor; Kom Omb, Kom Ombo; Port Safaga; Port Said; Sharm el Sheikh; Suez, where the Suez Canal is located; Zagazig; and Al-Minya. Oases include Bahariya, el Dakhla, Farafra, el Kharga and Siwa. Protectorates include Ras Mohamed National Park, Zaranik Protectorate and Siwa.

Egypt celebrates many festivals and religious carnivals, also known as mulid. They are usually associated with a particular Coptic or Sufi saint, but are often celebrated by all Egyptians irrespective of creed or religion. Ramadan has a special flavor in Egypt, celebrated with sounds, lights (local lanterns known as *fawanees*) and much flare that many Muslim tourists from the region flock to Egypt during Ramadan to witness the spectacle.

---

**14.3.2 KENYA' S HISTORY:**

---

Kenya, officially the Republic of Kenya, is a sovereign state in East Africa. The capital and largest city is Nairobi Kenya lies on the equator with the Indian Ocean to the south-east, Tanzania to the south, Uganda to the west, South Sudan to the north-west, Ethiopia to the north and Somalia to the north-east. Kenya covers 581,309 km<sup>2</sup> (224,445 sq mi) and has a population of about 43½ million in early 2013. The country is named after Mount Kenya, the second highest mountain in Africa.

Kenya has a warm and humid climate along its Indian Ocean coastline, with wildlife-rich Savannah grasslands inland towards the capital. Nairobi has a cool climate that gets colder approaching Mount Kenya, which has three permanently snow-capped peaks. Further inland there is a warm and humid climate around Lake Victoria, and temperate forested and hilly areas in the western region. The northeastern regions along the border with Somalia and Ethiopia are arid and semi-arid areas with near-desert landscapes. Lake Victoria, the world's second largest fresh water lake and the world's largest tropical lake, is situated to the southwest and is shared with Uganda and Tanzania. Kenya is famous for its safaries and diverse wildlife reserves and national parks such as the East and West Tsavlo National Park, Lake Nakuru National Park, and Aberdares National Park. There

are several world heritage sites such as Lamu, and world-renowned beaches such as Kilifi where international yachting competitions are held each year.

The African Great Lakes region, of which Kenya is a part, has been inhabited by humans since the Lower Paleolithic period. The Bantu expansion reached the area from west-Central Africa by the first millennium AD, and the borders of the modern state comprise the crossroads of the Niger-Congo, Nilo-Saharan and Afro-Asiatic ethno-linguistic areas of the continent, making Kenya a multi-cultural country. European and Arab presence in Mombasa dates to the Early Modern period, but European exploration of the interior began only in the 19th century. The British Empire established the East Africa Protectorate in 1895, known from 1920 as the Colony. The Republic of Kenya became independent in December 1963. Following a referendum in August 2010 and adoption of a new constitution, Kenya is now divided into 47 semi-autonomous countries, governed by elected governors.

The capital, Nairobi, is a regional commercial hub. The economy of Kenya is the largest by GDP in East and Central Africa. Agriculture is a major employer and the country traditionally exports tea and coffee, and more recently fresh flowers to Europe. The service industry is a major economic driver. Kenya is a member of the East African Community.

Mount Kenya is the highest peak in Kenya at 5,199 m (17,057 ft). Kenya is named after the mountain.

At 580,367 km<sup>2</sup> (224,081 sq mi), Kenya is the world's forty-seventh largest country (after Madagascar). From the coast on the Indian Ocean, the low plains rise to central highlands. The highlands are bisected by the Great Rift Valley; a fertile plateau lies in the east. The Kenyan Highlands comprise one of the most successful agricultural production regions in Africa. The highlands are the site of the highest point in Kenya and the second highest peak on the continent: Mount Kenya, which reaches 5,199 m (17,057 ft) and is the site of glaciers. Mount Kilimanjaro (5,895 m or 19,341 ft) can be seen from Kenya to the South of the Tanzanian border.

Kenya is the setting for one of the Natural Wonders of the World – the great wildebeest migration. 11.5 million of these ungulates migrate a distance of 1,800 miles from the Serengeti in neighboring Tanzania to the Masai Mara in Kenya, in a constant clockwise fashion, searching for food and water supplies.

Kenya is a diverse country and, although tribalism is a major problem in Kenya, tribal stereotypes and regional accents are a great source of amusement all over the country. Addressing someone by their tribe is not offensive. Notable peoples include the Swahili on the coast, pastoralist communities in the north, and several different communities in the central and western regions. The Maasai culture is well known because of tourism,

despite being a minor percentage of the Kenyan population. They are renowned for their elaborate upper body adornment and jewellery.

---

**14.4 VARIETY OF TOURISM PRODUCTS IN EGYPT AND KENYA:**

---

Cruise tourism and Historical tourism is very popular in Egypt. Desert Safari Adventure: Desert cover about 20 % of the earth's land surface and are often thought of as unforgiving environments where it is difficult to survive even a day or two. Ancient Egyptian history is a long and complex one with more than 3000 years. Green travel through Eco-lodges. Ecotourism or green travel has become quite common these days with the increasing awareness of humanity's effect on the planet. Spiritual Monuments, beaches or even nature tours are very popular in Egypt. Alexandria, known as "The Pearl of the Mediterranean", has an atmosphere that is more Mediterranean than Middle Eastern; its ambience and cultural heritage.

Beautiful landscapes, incredible wildlife in their natural habitat, and a tropical Indian Ocean coastline are just a few of the widely recognized attractions in Kenya. There are tons of things to do in Kenya, from exploring the capital city of Nairobi to going on safaris, and hanging out on Lake Victoria. There's nothing more famous about Kenya than going on a safari to one of the many national parks or reserves located throughout the country. The most famous wildlife viewing sanctuaries include Maasai Mara, Amboseli, Lake Nakuru and Tsavo East. For many, the goal is to catch a glimpse of the African Big 5 which includes lion, leopard, elephant, buffalo and rhino. Safaris can be on the expensive side, but going on a safari and observing African animals in their natural habitat is a once in a lifetime experience.

The mix of cultures has created a fascinating history and a unique Swahili people and culture. Lamu includes one of the oldest inhabited cities in Kenya. Not nearly as popular as neighboring giant Mount Kilimanjaro, Mount Kenya remains Africa's second tallest peak and is often considered a more challenging climb. The breathtaking scenery is marked by incredible views of Kenya and even great glimpses of Mount Kilimanjaro in Tanzania. Most trekkers summit Mount Kenya at Lenana Peak point. Whitewater rafting and kayaking on the Tana River in Kenya are becoming popular activities in the country. Not only are there adventurous river rapids, but also an opportunity to view Kenya's nature from the river. The ecosystem and bird viewing while rafting through the valley are spectacular.

---

**14.5 TEN BIGGEST CITIES OF EGYPT AND KENYA:**

---

---

**14.5.1 EGYPT'S TOP 10 BIGGEST CITIES:**

---

**1. Cairo:** Cairo is the capital of Egypt and the largest city in the Arab world and Africa. Cairo has long been a centre of the region's political and cultural life. Cairo was founded by the Fatimid dynasty in the 10th century AD, but the land composing the present-day city was the site of national capitals whose remnants remain visible in parts of old Cairo. Cairo is also associated with ancient Egypt as it is close to the ancient cities of Memphis, Giza and which are near the Great Sphinx and the Pyramids of Giza.

**2. Alexandria:** Alexandria is the second largest city in Egypt with a population of 4.1 million, extending about 32 km (20 mi) along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in the north central part of the country. It is also the largest city lying directly on the Mediterranean coast. Alexandria is Egypt's largest seaport, serving approximately 80% of Egypt's imports and exports. It is an important industrial center because of its natural gas and oil pipelines from Suez. Alexandria is also an important tourist resort.

**3. Giza:** Giza is the third largest city in Egypt. It is located on the west bank of the Nile, some 20 km (12.43 mi) southwest of central Cairo. The city of Giza is the capital of the Giza Governorate, and is located near the northeast border of this governorate in coordinates. It is located right on the banks of the River Nile. Giza is most famous as the location of the Giza Plateau: the site of some of the most impressive ancient monuments in the world, including a complex of ancient Egyptian royal mortuary and sacred structures, including the Great Sphinx, the Great Pyramid of Giza, and a number of other large pyramids and temples. The Great Pyramid of Giza at one time was advocated (1884) as the location for the Prime Meridian, a reference point used for determining a base longitude.

**4. Shubra El-Kheima:** Shubra El-Kheima is the fourth largest city in Egypt. The city is situated in the north of Cairo and is part of its agglomeration of Greater Cairo. Shubra El-Kheima was primarily inhabited by workers (and their families), who have worked in surrounding factories since the 1940s. However, recently it contains the great expansion of Greater Cairo towards the north as a consequence of migration from rural areas. Its population was 1,016,722 at the 2006 Census. It's famous for being a Hash center in country. Shubra El-Kheima hosts the famous Mohamed Ali Palace of Mehmet Ali Pasha, the Albanian leader of Egypt.

**5. Port Said:** Port Said is a city that lies in north east Egypt extending about 30 kilometres (19 mi) along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, a north of the Suez Canal. The city was established in 1859 during the building of the Suez Canal. Port Said has been ranked the second among the Egyptian cities according to the Human Development Index in 2009

and 2010. There are numerous old houses with grand balconies on all floors, giving the city a distinctive look. Port Said's twin city is Port Fuad, which lies on the eastern bank of the canal. The two cities coexist, to the extent that there hardly is any town centre in Port Fuad. The cities are connected by free ferries running all through the day, and together they form a metropolitan area with over a million residents that extend both on the African and the Asian sides of the Suez Canal. The only other metropolitan area in the world that also spans two continents is Istanbul.

**6. Suez:** Suez is a seaport city in north-eastern Egypt, located on the north coast of the Gulf of Suez (a branch of the Red Sea), near the southern terminus of the Suez canal having the same boundaries as Suez Governorate. It has three harbors, Adabya, Ain Sokhna and Port Tawfiq, and extensive port facilities.

**7. Luxor:** Luxor is a city in Upper (southern) Egypt and the capital of Luxor governorate. With an area of approximately 416 square kilometres (161 sq mi) and the site of the ancient Egyptian city of Thebes.

Luxor has frequently been characterized as the "world's greatest open air museum", as the ruins of the Temple complexes at Karnak and Luxor stand within the modern city. Immediately opposite, across the River Nile lie the monuments, temples and tombs on the West Bank Necropolis, which include the Valley of the Kings and valley of the Queens. Thousands of tourists from all around the world arrive annually to visit these monuments, contributing a large part towards the economy for the modern city.

**8. Mansoura:** Mansoura is a city in Egypt and the capital of the Dakahlia Governorate. The city is named after the Egyptian victory over Louis IX of France during the Seventh Crusade. Mansoura lies on the east bank of the Damietta branch of the Nile, in the Delta region. It is about 120 km northeast of Cairo. Mansoura is famous for its architectural style, especially the Shinnawi Palace (after Mohamed Bek El-Shinnawi, a member of the Wafd Party)

**9. El-Mahalla El-Kubra:** El-Mahalla El-Kubra is a large industrial and agricultural city in Egypt, located in the middle of the Nile Delta on the western bank of the Damietta branch.. It is the largest city of the Gharbia Governorate and the second largest in the Nile Delta, with a population of approximately 442,000 inhabitants (2001 statistics). The city is also famous for its two football teams: Ghazl Al-Mehalla and Baladeyet Al-Mahalla.

**10. Tanta:** Tanta is a city in Egypt. It is the country's fifth largest populated area. Tanta is located 94 km (58 mi) north to Cairo and 130 km (81 mi) southeast of Alexandria. The capital of the Gharbia Governorate, it is a centre for the Cotton ginning industry and the main rail road hub of the Nile Delta.

Tanta is known for its sweets, eaten during the Moulid festivals. The main streets are Al-Bahr (Algeish) Street, Al-Galaa Street, Al-Nahaas Street, Hassan Radwan Street, Alnady

Street and Saeed Street. This city comes to life in late October at the end of the cotton harvest. About two million people from around the Delta and other parts of the Arab world come for the Moulid of Sayid Ahmed el-Badawi, which is an eight day celebration.

---

**14.5.2 KENYA'S TOP 10 BIGGEST CITIES:**

---

**1. Nairobi:** Nairobi is the capital and largest city of Kenya. However, it is popularly known as the "Green City in the Sun" and is surrounded by several expanding villa suburbs. Inhabitants of Nairobi are referred to as Nairobians. Nairobi is the most populous city in East Africa with a current estimated population of about 3 million. Nairobi is currently the 12th largest city in Africa, including the population of its suburbs. Nairobi is an established hub for business and culture. The Nairobi stock exchange (NSE) is one of the largest in Africa and the second oldest exchange on the continent. It is ranked 4th in terms of trading volume and capable of making 10 million trades a day. The Globalization and World Cities Study Group and Network (GWCSGN) define Nairobi as a prominent social center.

**2. Mombasa:** Mombasa is the second-largest city in Kenya with a population of over one million people. A regional cultural and economic hub, Mombasa has a prominent port and an international airport and is an important regional tourism centre. Situated on the east coast of Kenya in coast province, Mombasa's bordering the Indian Ocean made it a historical trading centre, and it was successively controlled by many countries due to its strategic location. Administratively, Mombasa is the capital of, and is coincident with Mombasa country.

This city is located on Mombasa Island and sprawls to the surrounding main lands. The island is separated from the mainland by two creeks: Tudor Creek and Kilindini Harbour. It is connected to the mainland to the north by the Nyali Bridge, to the south by the Likoni Ferry and to the west by the Makupa Causeway, alongside which runs the Kenya-Uganda Railway.

**3. Nakuru:** Nakuru was the former provincial capital of Kenya's Rift valley province, and the third largest urban centre in the country, lies about 1850 m above sea level. It is also the capital of Nakuru country.

The town is also a center for various retail businesses that provide goods and services to the manufacturing and agricultural sectors. A large public market lies to the west of the town on the main thoroughfare to the capital, Nairobi. Nakuru is home to lake Nakuru one of the Rift valley soda lakes.

**4. Eldoret:** Eldoret is a town in western Kenya and the administrative centre of Uasin Gishu Country of Rift valley region and it is currently the fastest growing town in Kenya, and currently the 5th largest in Kenya. Lying south of the Cherangani hills, the local

elevation varies from about 2100 metres above sea level at the airport to more than 2700 metres in nearby areas (7000–9000 feet).

**5. Kisumu:** Kisumu is a port city in western Kenya at 1,131 m (3,711 ft) and It is the third largest city in Kenya, the principal city of western Kenya, the immediate former capital of Nyanza province and the headquarters of Kisumu Country. It is the largest city in Nyanza region and second most important city after Kampala in the greater Lake Victoria basin.

**6. Thika:** Thika is an industrial town in Central province, Kenya, lying on the A2 road 40 kilometres (25 mi) north east of Nairobi near the confluence of the Thika and Chania Rivers. Thika is home to the Chania Falls, 14 falls on river Athi and the Thika Falls, while O1 Donyo Sabuk National Park lies to its southeast.

The town has a railway station but there is only limited passenger service with only cargo trains operating, although there are plans to extend the proposed light rail system to Thika. The town is currently the headquarters of Thika West district following the split of the larger Thika district (created in 1994) into five districts: Thika East and Thika West, Ruiru, Gatundu and Gatanga.

**7. Kitale:** Kitale is an agricultural town in western Kenya situated between Mount Elgon and the Cherangani hills at an elevation of around 7,000 feet (2,100 m). It is the administrative centre of the Trans-Nzoia district in the Rift valley province. The main cash crops grown in the area are sunflower, tea, coffee, Pyrethrum, seed beans and seed maize. Kitale is a market town for the local agricultural area and is known for the Kitale Museum and agro forestry. Saiwa Swamp National Park lies near the town.

**8. Malindi:** Malindi is a town on Malindi Bay at the mouth of the Galana River lying on the Indian Ocean coast of Kenya. It is 120 kilometres northeast of Mombasa. It is the capital of the Malindi district. Tourism is the major industry in Malindi. The city is exceptionally popular among Italian tourists. Malindi is served with a domestic airport and a highway between Mombasa and Lamu. The nearby Watamu resort and Gedi Ruins (also known as Gede) are south of Malindi. The mouth of the Sabaki River lies in northern Malindi. The Waramu and Malindi Marine National Park form a continuous protected coastal area south of Malindi. The area shows classic examples of Swahili architecture.

**9. Garissa:** Garissa is the capital of Garissa country in the former North Eastern province of Kenya. The Tana River that rises at the mountains west of Nyeri Aberdar flows through the city. The Bour –Algi Giraffe Sanctuary situated 5 km south of Garissa, is home to endangered wildlife including the Roths child Giraffe, Gerenuk and other herbivores including Kirk's dik-dik, Lesser Kudu, Warthog and Waterbuck. Garissa is a market center and the commercial hub of the Garissa country.

**10. Kakamega:** Kakamega is a town in western Kenya lying about 30 km north of the Equator. It is the headquarters of The Kakamega country. It is 52 km north of Kisumu, the third largest city in Kenya and a port city on Lake Victoria. Kakamega County is Kenya's second most populous county after Nairobi. The county has 9 constituencies in total namely Butere, Mumias, Matungu, Khwisero, Shinyalu, Lurambi, Ikolomani, Lugari and Malava. Kakamega serves as the headquarters of Kenya's largest sugar producing firm, Mumias Sugar, located in the village of Mumias. Kakamega Forest is the main tourist destination in the area. Another attraction is the *Crying Stone of Ilesi* located along the highway towards Kisumu. It is a 40 metres high rock dome resembling a human figure whose "eyes" drop water.

---

**14.6 TOURISM RESOURCES IN EGYPT AND KENYA:**

---

In 2010, the receipts for the international tourism in Egypt are \$13,633,000,000. With a great increase, Egypt raised an amount of money that was about \$2,942,000,000 in 1998. On the other hand, in 2013, Egypt is ranking the 75th position of world's best country in terms of tourism and traveling, while in 2011, it was the 85th.

The celebrated tourist attractions of Egypt are the millennia-old monuments for which the Nile Valley is world famous. Principal among them are the Pyramids and Great Sphinx at Giza, the Abu Simbel temples south of Aswan and the Karnak Temple Complex and Valley of the Kings near Luxor. Cairo also boasts the Cairo Museum and the Mosque of Muhammad Ali Pasha and the coastal areas of Sinai Peninsula are very popular with visitors as well.

Giza, 20 km southwest of Cairo, is the site of some of the most impressive and oldest (26th century BC) ancient monuments in the world, including a complex of ancient Egyptian royal mortuary and sacred structures, including the Great Sphinx, the Great Pyramid of Giza, and a number of other large pyramids and temples. Some of the well-known artifacts' of ancient pharaonic civilization are: Pyramids: Perhaps the most known pyramids are the three pyramids of Giza, but there are more than 70 pyramids along the Nile. Beside the giant three pyramids is Sphinx, a lion-bodied guard of the pyramids. These three kings' bodies are buried in these enormous pyramids. The biggest pyramid, Cheops', is known as the Great Pyramid because it measures 145 meters tall. Touristic places beside the pyramids are The Solar Barque Museum, The Sphinx Complex and The Sphinx Sound and Light Show.

**Saqqara Complex:** The vast necropolis of Saqqara including Memphis is located 24 kilometers south of central Cairo. Memphis was founded in about 3000 BC by Menes, along with 11 other pyramids. Memphis was the administrative capital of ancient Egypt. You will find Zoser's funerary complex, Mereruka's tomb, and Serapeum. Serapeum is a large limestone structure and an amazing collection of mummified Apis bulls in gargantuan granite coffins of various kings such as King Teti.

**Nile cruises:** Nile cruises may vary considerably, but typical Nile cruises are either three, four or seven nights. The shorter tours usually operate between Luxor and Aswan, while the longer cruises travel further north to Dendera, often offering day tours overland to more remote locations.

The tourist industry in Kenya is the 2nd largest source of foreign exchange revenue following agriculture. The main tourist attractions are photo safaris through the 19 national parks and game reserves. Other attractions include the mosques at Mombasa; the renowned scenery of the Great Rift Valley; the coffee plantations at Thika; a view of Mt. Kilimanjaro, across the border into Tanzania; and its beaches along the Indian Ocean.

**National parks:** Kenya National Parks are controlled by Kenya Wildlife Services, who look after and protect the areas. The wages of workers in the National Parks are usually funded by entrance fees charged for safaris and tours. Unlike Animal Reserves, National Parks allow strictly no human habitation.

**Other great places to fit into your trip:**

- **Nairobi** - Urban Africa with contrasting images. art galleries, shopping malls, entertainments, great restaurants, elephant orphanage, giraffe centre etc
- **Baringo Bogoria** - Crocodiles, hippos, fish eagles and other amazing array of birdlife, hot springs.
- **Lake Turkana** - Remote desert environment, camels, tribal people and their homesteads
- **Lakipia** - Remote wilderness. Spectacular scenery, private ranches
- **Shimba Hills** - Handy for the coast, great tree house accommodation, elephants if you're lucky but few animals to see
- **Kakamega** - Tropical rain forest
- **Kisumu / Lake Victoria** - Largest Lake in Africa, good for fishing relaxing
- **Lake Magadi** - Fossils of prehistoric man

---

**14.7 TOP 10 PLACES IN EYPT AND KENYA:**

---

---

**14.7.1 EGYPT'S TOP 10 PLACES:**

---

**1. Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx:** Giza Pyramids are considered to be the oldest tourist destination in the world. Although shrouded in mysteries even for the scientists, the Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx are still one of the most intriguing and magnificent spots on our planet.

The Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx are the only one of the Seven Wonders of the World that actually exists today. These pyramids built in honor of the kings Khufu, Kafhre and Menkaura are the greatest preserved tombs as regards of size and design and leave

anybody seeing them breathless and full of admiration. As for the Sphinx, the saying "The riddle of the Sphinx" is full of meaning because archaeologists still have unanswered questions about its purpose and symbolism. That is certainly a place that will leave you impressed and enchanted for a lifetime.

**2. Valley of the Kings:** Valley of the Kings near Luxor is a desert plain surrounded by steep gorgeous hills. Located on the west bank of the Nile River near Thebes, this is the greatest outdoor museum in the world. The museum consists of 63 tombs and chambers, which differ in size from a simple pit to a complex tomb with over 120 chambers. The royal tombs are richly decorated with scenes from Egyptian mythology and give evidences for the religion and rituals of that time. That is the place where is located the famous tomb of Tutankhamun.

**3. River Nile Cruise:** Nile is the queen of rivers in the world. With its 6650 km length it is considered to be the longest river on Earth. We have every right to say that the Nile is the life source of the African territories. Its historical significance dates back thousands of years ago, when in the Nile Delta was conceived, developed, flourished and died one of the greatest civilizations - that of ancient Egypt. Cruising the Nile is certainly a lifetime experience and a popular way of visiting Upper Egypt. Don't miss the chance to feel the Egypt by a magnificent adventure along Nile.

**4. Abu Simbel:** In 1257 Pharaoh Ramses II built two temples carved into solid rock in the area along the eastern shore of Nile, south of Aswan, on the territory of Nubia, known today as Abu Simbel. The temples at Abu Simbel were at first situated further down the hillside, but due to the rising waters of Lake Nasser in the 1960's each temple was carefully moved uphill and reassembled before the water rose. The greater of the two temples is dedicated to the gods Amon Ra, Horus and Ptah and to Ramses himself and is considered to be one of the most magnificent temples in Egypt. The small temple is dedicated to the goddess Hathor and the gorgeous queen Nefertiti. Hardly can be described the feeling that fulfills you walking along these colossal structures but that is a place, which is worth every single step that you take there.

**5. Luxor Temple:** Karnak Temple is the second most visited attraction in Egypt giving way only to the pyramids at Giza. This unique large outdoor museum is located about 500 km south of the capital Cairo. About thirty pharaohs have contributed to the construction of the buildings so that they have reached this significant size and complexity of the architecture, which cannot be seen anywhere else in the world. The museum is a huge conglomerate of ruined temples, chapels, pylons and other buildings. Undoubtedly the most magnetic attraction here is the Great Temple of Amun. Every night there is performed a worldwide popular show "Sound and Light", which should not be missed.

**6. Hurghada:** Hurghada resort is located on the Red Sea, about 350 km southeast of the

capital city Cairo. From a quiet fishing village in the past today Hurghada is one of the most beautiful resorts that stretch along 20 km of sandy coastline. The resort is worldwide famous for its clear waters and excellent conditions for diving and is a favorite vacation spot for tourists from all over the world. Hurghada offers everything typical for a modern city without losing its tranquil desert atmosphere. There you can enjoy the sun on the beach, embark on a submarine in the transparent depths of the sea and see the amazing coral reefs and diverse marine life, go by boat to one of the islands and snorkel in the turquoise waters or simply enjoy the magnificent view.

**7. The Citadel of Qaitbay, Alexandria:** Fort Qaitbay is located at the place of the legendary historical building - the Lighthouse of Alexandria. It is claimed that the remains of the lighthouse were used for the construction of the citadel, built in the late 14th century. It is considered one of the most important strongholds not only for Egypt but for the entire Mediterranean coast. Today the visitors of Qaitbay remain amazed at the sight of the defense wall of the fort. The eastern wall of the fortress tower is not protected, but the wall of the western part includes three security towers. In the middle of the south wall there is a gate that leads to the main entrance. The north wall, which is overlooking the sea, has square-shaped windows. In front of the main tower there is a large garden where you can sit and admire the stunning view.

**8. The Egyptian Museum, Cairo:** The Egyptian Museum located in Cairo is one of the largest museums in the world hosting a stunning exhibition of objects of ancient Egyptian art. The Egyptian Museum is famous for its large collection of papyrus and coins used in the ancient world. The most fabulous exhibit there is the golden room, where you can see the treasures from Tutankhamun's tomb. Visitors to the Egyptian Museum in Cairo cannot be disappointed after seeing the legendary treasures of art kept in there.

**9. Siwa Oasis:** The area of the Oasis Siwa is a very small inhabited area located in the middle of the Western Egyptian desert. Siwa, which is only 80 km long and 20 km wide, is an isolated oasis, where the spirit of the times and traditions have managed to be preserved to a large extent.

It is inhabited by nearly 23,000 people, mostly ethnic Berbers, who speak different dialects. For its small size Siwa has succeeded in becoming relatively large tourist center. Within the town there is a colorful marketplace, where you can find antique silver items, rare embroidered fabrics and the typical twisted palm baskets and ceramic vessels. A worthwhile place that saves the real spirit of Egypt - it certainly should be experienced.

**10. Pompeys Pillar, Alexandria:** The pearl of the Mediterranean - Alexandria is undoubtedly among the top destinations worldwide. In the Egyptian city reigns elegant atmosphere - a combination of features of the Middle East and Mediterranean. Among the few monuments preserved through the centuries is the so called Pompey's Pillar. It is perhaps the largest and most ancient monument built ever that raises there from ancient

times till today. The Colossal column is tall nearly 30 meters. It is assumed that it was built in 297 years after Christ, in honor of Emperor Diocletian. Around it there is a majestic Sphinx built of pink granite. One of the emblems of Egypt that should not be missed.

---

**14.7.2 KENYA'S TOP 10 PLACES:**

---

**1. Masai Mara National Reserve:** The Masai Mara National Reserve is one of the top tourist attractions in Kenya and the country's most popular game park. Each year the Masai Mara National Reserve is visited by thousands of tourists who come here to watch the exceptional population of game and the annual migration of zebra and wildebeest. The "Great Migration" takes place every year from July to October when millions of wildebeest and zebra migrate from the Serengeti in Tanzania.

**2. Amboseli National Park:** Amboseli National Park is a relatively small park located close to the Tanzania border at the foot of Africa's highest mountain, Mount Kilimanjaro. The park is famous for being the best place in Africa to get close to free-ranging elephants. Other attractions of the Amboseli National Park include opportunities to meet the Maasai people and spectacular views of Mount Kilimanjaro.

**3. Lake Nakuru:** Lake Nakuru is a very shallow lake in central Kenya. The lake's abundance of algae attracts vast quantities of lesser flamingos, sometimes more than one million at once. Often called the greatest bird spectacle on earth, the flamingos are one of Kenya's top attractions. Sadly, in recent years the number of flamingos at Lake Nakuru has been decreasing, due to environmental degradation and pollution.

**4. Tsavo National Park:** Tsavo is the largest national park in Kenya and one of the largest in the world. Due to its size the park was divided into Tsavo West and Tsavo East. The Tsavo West has spectacular scenery with a rolling volcanic landscape while Tsavo East has more open savannah than its western sibling. Tsavo National Park is the ideal destination in Kenya for people who seek solitude and privacy as well as the chance to explore the wilderness.

**5. Lamu Island:** Lamu Island is a part of Kenya's Lamu Archipelago, and has managed to stay unspoiled and untouched by the mass tourism that has hit much of Kenya's coastline. As the oldest living town in Kenya. Lamu Town has retained all the charm and character built up over centuries. There are no roads on Lamu Island, just alleyways and footpaths, and therefore, there are few motorized vehicles on the island. Residents move about on foot or by boat, and donkeys are used to transport goods and materials.

**6. Hell's Gate National Park:** Hell's Gate National Park is a tiny park named after a narrow break in the cliffs, once a tributary of a prehistoric lake that fed early humans in the Rift Valley. It is unique among Kenya's wildlife parks, as you are allowed to walk or cycle without a guide. There's dramatic scenery, with steep cliffs, gorges and basalt

columns. The national park is home to a wide variety of wildlife, though many are few in number. Examples of little seen wildlife include lions, leopards, and cheetahs.

**7. Samburu National Reserve:** Samburu National Reserve is a very peaceful national park in Northern Kenya. It attracts wildlife because of the Us Nyiro River that runs through it and the mixture of forest and grassland vegetation. All three big cats, lion, cheetah and leopard, can be found here, as well as elephants, buffalo and hippos. The Uaso Nyiro River contains large numbers of Nile crocodile.

**8. Mount Kenya:** Mount Kenya is the highest mountain in Kenya and the second-highest in Africa, after Kilimanjaro. The mountain offers a beautiful sight. Its series of peaks are crowned with snow, and its slopes are covered with forest. The 5199 meter (17,057 ft) high summit is a difficult technical climb, several lower peaks however are an easy destination for any fit trekker.

**9. Malindi:** Malindi provides a very nice introduction to the coastal tourist attractions in Kenya with its extensive coral reefs and beautiful beaches. There are surfing, snorkeling, deep-sea fishing and other water sports. The Malindi Marine National Park is protected and has fine beaches clear water and very colorful fish. Malindi is served with a domestic airport and a highway between Mombasa and Lamu.

**10. Nairobi National Park:** Nairobi National Park is just a 10 minutes drive from the center of Nairobi, with only a fence separating the park's wildlife from the metropolis. Nairobi's skyscrapers can be seen from the park. Despite its proximity to the city and the relative small size of the park, Nairobi National Park boasts a large and varied wildlife population. Migrating wildebeest and zebra gather in the park during the dry season, and it is one of Kenya's most successful rhinoceros sanctuaries.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS:**

---

- Write a short note on variety of tourism products in Egypt and Kenya.
- What are the tourist attractions of Egypt?
- What are the tourist attractions of Kenya?
- Make a list of top 10 biggest cities of Egypt.
- Make a list of top 10 biggest cities of Kenya.
- Indicate the 10 biggest cities in the maps of Egypt and Kenya.
- Indicate the top 10 places to visit in the map of Egypt and Kenya.

---

**14.8 LETS UP SUM UP:**

---

This unit gives ideas about the brief history of Egypt and Kenya. After going through this unit, we have understood that which are the important cities, their geographical location, culture, environment, history, economy and government etc. We came to know the

major attractions / tourist destination and their different dimensions in the country. This unit gives complete information that makes Egypt and Kenya a most preferred destination all over the world.

This unit ends with the description of top places to visit in Egypt and Kenya, which help to choose a destination as per the interest of the tourists.

---

**14.9 CLUES TO ANSWERS:**

---

- Refer Sec.4.4
- Refer Sec.4.7.1
- Refer Sec.4.7.2
- Refer Sec.4.5.1
- Refer Sec.4.5.2
- Refer Sec.4.5
- Refer Sec.4.7

---

**REFERENCES:**

---

- Background Note: Egypt. United States Department of State Bureau of Near Eastern Affairs. 10 November 2010. Retrieved 5 March 2011.
- Constitutional Declaration: A New Stage in the History of the Great Egyptian People. Egypt State Information Service. 30 March 2011. Retrieved 14 April 2011.
- Breasted, James Henry; Peter A. Piccione (2001). *Ancient Records of Egypt*. University of Illinois Press. pp. 76; 40.
- Midant-Reynes Béatrix. *The Prehistory of Egypt: From the First Egyptians to the First Kings*. Oxford: Blackwell Publishers.
- The Nile Valley 6000-4000 BC Neolithic. The British Museum. 2005. Retrieved 21 August 2008.
- Egypt- Major Cities. Country studies.us. Retrieved 2013-02-08.
- Kenya, Information (21 June 2011). Kenya in Brief. Retrieved 2012-11-25.
- Footit, Claire (2006) [2004]. *Kenya*. The Brade Travel Guide. Bradt Travel Guides Ltd. ISBN 1-84162-066-1.

---

**Unit-15**  
**Australia**

---

**Structure:**

**15.1 Objectives**

**15.2 Introduction**

**15.3 History of Australia**

**15.4 Variety of Tourism Products in Australia**

**15.5 Australia's Ten Biggest Cities**

**15.6 Tourism Resources in Australia**

**15.7 Top Ten Places in Australia**

**15.8 Lets up Sum Up**

**15.9 Clues to Answer**

---

**15.1 OBJECTIVES:**

---

The aim of this unit is to provide information of Australia, Tourism point of view. This unit will guide to the student about the Geographical location and all Tourism aspects of Australia, who attract not only the domestic tourists but also the foreign tourists in terms of tourism receipts and tourist arrivals. After going through Unit 16 on Australia, You will understand the following:

- Geographical location of the country
- Historical richness of the Country
- Importance of Culture in development of Tourism
- Characteristics of Tourism industry in Australia
- Natural attractions in the Country
- Important tourist cities in the Country
- Top tourist attractions of the Country

---

**15.2 INTRODUCTION:**

---

Unit 15 makes, an effort to gives the idea to the students about the Australia as a tourist destination and help them to understand the various dimensions of the Tourism attractions of the country. This unit attempts to through the light on the important cities, Geographical aspects, Attractions (Natural and Man-made), culture and its all aspects, environment, history, economy, government etc. in Australia.

Some interesting facts about Australia:

- **Name:** Commonwealth of Australia
- **Population:** 21,507,717 (2011 census)
- **Capital:** Canberra
- **Language:** English
- **Religion:** 61.1 Christian (61%) including 25.3 per cent as Roman Catholic and 17.1 per cent as Anglican. 22.3 per cent of the population reported having "no religion" (which includes humanism, atheism, agnosticism and rationalism). 7.2 per cent identify with non-Christian religions, the largest of these being Buddhism (2.5 per cent), followed by Islam (2.2 per cent), Hinduism (1.3 per cent) and Judaism (0.5 per cent).
- **Government:** Federal parliamentary constitutional monarchy
- **Currency:** Australian dollar (AUD)

---

**15.3 HISTORY OF AUSTRALIA:**

---

Australia is a country comprising the mainland of the Australian continent, the island of Tasmania and numerous smaller islands .It is the world's Sixth largest country by total area. Neighbouring countries include Indonesia, East Timor and Papua New Guinea to

the north; the Solomin Islands, Vanuatu and New Caledonia to the north-east; and to the south-east.

For at least 40,000 years before the first British settlement in the late 18th century, Australia was inhabited by indigenous Australians, who belonged to one or more of roughly 250 language groups.

A highly developed country and one of the wealthiest, Australia is the world's 12<sup>th</sup> largest economy and has the world's fifth highest per capita income. With the second highest human development index globally, Australia ranks highly in many international comparisons of national performance, such as quality of life, health, education, economic freedom, and political rights. Australia is a member of the G20, OECD, WTO, APEC, UN, Commonwealth of Nations, ANZUS and the Pacific Islands Forum. There is no probability, that any other detached body of land, of nearly equal extent, will ever be found in a more southern latitude; the name Terra Australia will, therefore, remain descriptive of the geographical importance of this country, and of its situation on the globe: it has antiquity to recommend it; and, having no reference to either of the two claiming nations, appears to be less objectionable than any other which could have been selected.

Australia's landmass of 7,617,930 square kilometers (2,941,300 sq mi) is on the Indo-Australian Plate. Surrounded by the Indian and Pacific oceans, it is separated from Asia by the Arafura and Timor seas, with the Coral Sea lying off the Queensland coast, and the Tasman Sea lying between Australia and New Zealand. The world's smallest continent and sixth largest country by total area, Australia – owing to its size and isolation – is often dubbed the "island continent", and is sometimes considered the world's largest island. Australia has 34,218 kilometers (21,262 mi) of coastline (excluding all offshore islands), and claims an extensive Exclusive Economic Zone of 8,148,250 square kilometers (3,146,060 sq mi). This exclusive economic zone does not include the Australian Antarctic Territory.

The great barrier reef, the world's largest coral reef, lies a short distance off the north-east coast and extends for over 2,000 kilometres (1,240 mi). Mount Augustus, claimed to be the world's largest monolith, is located in Western Australia. At 2,228 metres (7,310 ft), Mount Kosciuszko on the Great Dividing Range is the highest mountain on the Australian mainland. Even taller are Mawson Peak (at 2,745 metres or 9,006 feet), on the remote Australian territory of Heard island, and, in the Australian Antarctic Territory, Mount McClintock and Mount Menzies, at 3,492 metres (11,457 ft) and 3,355 metres (11,007 ft) respectively. Australia's size gives it a wide variety of landscapes, with subtropical rain forest in the north-east, mountain ranges in the south-east, south-west and east, and dry desert in the centre. It is the flattest continent, with the oldest and least fertile soils; desert or semi-arid land commonly known as the outback makes up by far the largest portion of land. The driest inhabited continent, only its south-east and south-west corners have a

temperate climate The population density 2.8 inhabitants per square kilometre, is among the lowest in the world, although a large proportion of the population lives along the temperate south-eastern coastline.

Eastern Australia is marked by the Great Dividing Range, which runs parallel to the coast of Queensland, New South Wales and much of Victoria. The name is not strictly accurate, because parts of the range consist of low hills, and the highlands are typically no more than 1,600 metres (5,249 ft) in height. The coastal uplands and a belt of Brigalow grasslands lie between the coast and the mountains, while inland of the dividing range are large areas of grassland. These include the western plains of New South Wales, and the Einasleigh uplands, Barkly Tableland, and Mulga lands of inland Queensland. The northernmost point of the east coast is the tropical-rain forested Cape York Peninsula.

The landscapes of the northern part of the country – the Top end and the Gulf Country behind the Gulf of Carpentaria, with their tropical climate – consists of woodland, grassland and desert.

At the north-west corner of the continent are the sandstone cliffs and gorges of the Kimberley and below that the Pilbara. To the south of these and inland, lay more areas of grassland: the Ord Victoria Plain and the Western Australian Mulga Shrublands. At the heart of the country are the uplands of central Australia; prominent features of the centre and south include the inland Simpson. Tirari and Sturt Stony, Gibson, Great Sandy, Tanami, and Great Victoria deserts, with the famous Nullarbor Plain on the southern coast.

Australia is a wealthy country with a market economy, a relatively high GDP per capita, and a relatively low rate of poverty. The Australian dollar is the currency for the nation, including Christmas Island, Cocos (Keeling) Islands, and Norfolk Island, as well as the independent Pacific island states of Kiribati, Nauru and Tuvalu With the 2006 merger of the Australian Stock Exchange and the Sydney Futures Exchange, the Australian security exchange became the ninth largest in the world.

Ranked third in the Index of Economic freedom (2010),Australia is the world's thirteenth largest economy and has the fifth highest per capita GDP (nominal) at \$66,984. The country was ranked second in the United Nations 2011Human development index.

All of Australia's major cities fare well in global comparative livability surveys; Melbourne reached first place on *The Economist's* 2011 and 2012 world's most livable cities lists, followed by Sydney, Perth, and Adelaide in sixth, eighth, and ninth place respectively.

The Barossa Valley is a wine – producing region in South Australia. Fewer than 15 per cent of Australians live in rural areas. The Indigenous population – mainland Aborigines and Torres Strait Islanders – was counted at 548,370 (2.5 per cent of the total population)

in 2011, a significant increase from 115,953 in the 1976 census. The increase is partly due to the fact that previously, many people with Indigenous heritage were overlooked by the census due to undercount and cases where their Indigenous status had not been recorded on the form.

---

**15.4 VARIETY OF TOURISM PRODUCTS:**

---

Tourism is a very large sector of the Australian economy. According to a recent report on the industry by the Australian government, the tourism industry represents 4.7% of Australia's GDP, is responsible for 11.2% of Australia's export earnings, and employs 6% of the workforce. Australia's international tourism campaigns have largely centred around the image of Australia as a wild, expansive, almost uninhabited continent, with all manner of exotic scenery and wildlife, endless beaches, and friendly, relaxed locals.

Major sources for international tourism to Australia include the United States and Japan. Both countries' tourists benefitted from the weakness of the Australian dollar against their own currencies over much of the 1980s and 1990s, making Australian holidays quite cheap. Japanese tourists make up a distinctive part of the Australian tourism market, usually taking short package tours which concentrate heavily on the iconic sights, Australian native animals (particularly the koala and to a lesser extent the fairy penguin, which the Japanese seem to find irresistibly cute), and souvenir shops, to the bemusement of locals who wonder what these tourists are actually getting out of their visit.

Another major source of tourists to Australia includes backpackers, mostly young people from the United States and western Europe (particularly the United Kingdom). Spending more time in Australia, these travellers tend to explore considerably more of the country. Visitors from the UK are also common. A particularly noticeable part of this market coincides with visits of British sporting teams, such as the English cricket or rugby union team.

Australians are big domestic travellers as well, with a profusion of seaside resort towns in every state (many located on or near good surfing beaches), mountain retreats (including ski fields, though poor ones by international standards), fishing locations, wine growing regions, as well as domestic visitation of the major tourist spots. With the large number of four-wheel drive vehicles purchased in recent years, "adventure tourism" exploring the many remote parts of Australia inaccessible by other means has become more popular.

- **Cultural Tourism:** Since 1788, the basis of Australian culture has been strongly influenced by Anglo-Celtic Western culture. Distinctive cultural features have also arisen from Australia's natural environment and Indigenous cultures. Since the mid-20th century, American popular culture has strongly influenced Australia, particularly through television and cinema. Other cultural influences come from neighboring Asian countries, and through large-scale immigration from non-English-speaking nations

- **Health Tourism:** Total expenditure on health (including private sector spending) is around 9.8 per cent of GDP. Australia introduced universal health care in 1975. Known as Medicare, it is now nominally funded by an income tax surcharge known as the *Medicare levy*, currently set at 1.5 per cent. The states manage hospitals and attached outpatient services, while the Commonwealth funds the Pharmaceutical benefits scheme (subsidising the costs of medicines) and general practice.
- **Ethnic Tourism:** The food of Indigenous Australians was largely influenced by the area in which they lived. Most tribal groups subsisted on a simple hunter-gatherer diet, hunting native game and fish and collecting native plants and fruit. The general term for native Australian flora and fauna used as a source of food is bush tucker. The first settlers introduced British food to the continent which much of what is now considered typical Australian food is based on the Sunday roast has become an enduring tradition for many Australians.
- **Leisure Tourism:** There are various Beaches in Australia, famous for leisure Tourism.
- **Cruise Tourism and MICE Tourism** is also very popular in Australia.

---

**15.5 AUSTRALIA'S TEN BIGGEST CITIES:**

---

---

**1. Sydney:**

---

Sydney is the main entry point in Australia for most people, and the city offers many interesting sites to visit such as the Opera House, Darling Harbour with marine aquarium, lots of shopping malls, museums, and it worth a visit to the other side of the bay including the Zoo and the beach of mainly. Visiting the downtown tower (Sydney Tower) will have a complete view of the city from the top. The Blue Mountains will provide a beautiful panorama of the valley. The nightlife in Sydney is one of the most active in all Australia.

---

**2. Melbourne:**

---

Melbourne is the capital and most populous city in the state of Victoria and the second most populous city in Australia. The Melbourne city centre is the hub of the greater metropolitan area and the Census statistical division – of which "Melbourne" is the common name. As of June 2012, the greater geographical area had a population of 4.25 million. Inhabitants of Melbourne are called Melbournians.

The metropolis is located on the large natural bay known as Port Phillip, with the city centre positioned on the estuary of the Yarra River (at the northernmost point of the bay) The metropolitan area then extends south from the city centre, along the eastern and western shorelines of Port Phillip, and expands into the hinterland. The city centre is

situated in the municipality known as the city of Melbourne. The metropolitan area consists of a further 30 municipalities.

Melbourne was officially declared a city by Queen Victoria in 1847. In 1851, it became the capital city of the newly created colony of Victoria. During the Victoria gold rush of the 1850s, it was transformed into one of the world's largest and wealthiest cities. After the federation of Australia in 1901, it served as the interim seat of government of the newly created nation of Australia until 1927. Often referred to as the "Garden City" and "cultural capital of Australia", Melbourne is the birthplace of cultural institutions such as Australian film (as well as the world's first feature film), Australian television, Australian rules football, the Australian impressionist art movement and Australian dance styles such as New Vogue and the Melbourne Shuffle. It is also a major centre for contemporary and traditional Australian music. Melbourne was ranked as the world's most livable city in ratings published by the Economist group's intelligence unit in August 2011 and again in 2012.

---

### **3. Brisbane:**

---

Brisbane is the capital and most populous city in the Australian state of Queensland and the third most populous city in Australia. Brisbane's metropolitan area has a population of 2.15 million, and the South East Queensland urban conurbation, centered on Brisbane, encompasses a population of more than 3 million. The Brisbane central business district stands on the original European settlement and is situated inside a bend of the Brisbane River, approximately 23 km (14 mi) from its mouth at Morton Bay.

The metropolitan area extends in all directions along the floodplain of the Brisbane River valley between the bay and the Great Dividing Range. While the metropolitan area is governed by several municipalities, a large portion of central Brisbane is governed by the Brisbane city council, which is by far Australia's largest local government area by population. Brisbane is the largest economy between Sydney and Singapore and as of 2008 is classified as a Global city.

---

### **4. Perth:**

---

Perth is the capital and largest city of the Australian state of Western Australia. It is the fourth most populous city in Australia, with an estimated population of 1.83 million living in the Perth Metropolitan area. Part of the South west land division of Western Australia, the majority of the metropolitan area of Perth is located on the Swan coastal plain, a narrow strip between the Indian Ocean and the Darling scarp, a low coastal escarpment. The first areas settled were on the Swan River, with the city's central business district located on its shores. Perth's metropolitan area is formally divided into a number of local government areas, which themselves consist of a large number of suburbs,

extending from two rocks in the north to Rockingham in the south, and east inland to the lakes.

Perth was originally founded by Captain James Sterling in 1829 as the administrative centre of the Swan River colony, and gained city status in 1856 (currently vested in the smaller city of Perth). The city is named for Perth, Scotland by influence of Sir George Murray, then British Secretary of state of war and the colonies.

---

**5. Adelaide:**

---

Adelaide is the capital city of South Australia and the fifth-largest city in Australia. According to the 2011 census, Adelaide has a population of 1.23 million. The demonym "Adelaidean" is used in reference to the city and its residents. Adelaide is north of the Fleurieu Peninsula, on the Adelaide plains between the Gulf St Vincent and the low-lying Mount Lofty Ranges which surround the city. Adelaide stretches 20 km (12 mi) from the coast to the foothills, and 90 km (56 mi) from Gawler at its northern extent to Sellicks Beach in the south.

As South Australia's seat of government and commercial centre, Adelaide is the site of many governmental and financial institutions. Most of these are concentrated in the city centre along the cultural boulevard of North Terrace, King William Street and in various districts of the metropolitan area. Today, Adelaide is noted for its many festivals and sporting events, its food, wine and culture, its long beachfronts, and its large defense and manufacturing sectors. It ranks highly in terms of livability, being listed in the Top 10 of the Economist's World's Most Livable Cities index in 2010, 2011 and 2012. It has also been ranked the most livable city in Australia by the Property Council of Australia in 2011, 2012 and again in 2013.

---

**6. Tweed Heads:**

---

Tweed Heads is a town located on the Tweed River in north-eastern New South Wales, Australia, in Tweed Shire. Tweed Heads is located next to the border with Queensland, adjacent to the "Twin Town" of Coolangatta, a suburb of the Gold coast .It is often referred to as a town where you can change time zones- even celebrate New Year twice within an hour - simply by crossing the street, due to its close proximity to the Queensland border, and the fact that New South Wales observes daylight saving whereas Queensland does not.

Tweed Heads was once connected to the Queensland railway system, with the South coast line providing a direct connection to Brisbane. The railway opened in 1903 and closed in 1961. The site of the station has been converted to parklands and commercial development.

Australia's Gold Coast is a modern city of glittering high-rise buildings, built around superb beaches, including the world renowned 'Surfers Paradise'. Australia's sixth largest city, and the second largest in the state of Queensland, the Gold Coast is where the 'bikini' was born. Along with endless stretches of golden beaches, there are international theme parks, designer boutiques, luxurious spa retreats, world-class golf courses, award-winning restaurants, up market bars and lively nightclubs. The ongoing buzz is continued through a series of festivals and events almost every month of the year showcasing some of Australia's best sporting talent. See surf life saving champions in action; join Australia's iron men and women the 'Coolangatta Classic' ocean swim; and watch the world's best surfers compete at the Quicksilver & Roxy Pro.

The Gold Coast is also the gateway to some of Queensland's best natural attractions. Whale-watch, island-hop and discover the area's Aboriginal culture. Travel west you'll find one of Australia's most biologically diverse regions, the lush rainforest-cloaked hinterland with World Heritage-listed national parks such as Lamington, Border Ranges, Main Range and Nightcap. Head south to the Queensland- New South Wales border where you'll find Coolangatta and Tweed Heads and the picturesque beauty of the Mt Warning National Park. Take the Great Sunshine Way to Brisbane, Fraser Island and Bundaberg; or the Pacific Coast Touring Route from Brisbane to Cairns. Along the way you will soon discover the treasures that make this coast as precious as gold.

---

**7. Newcastle:**

---

Newcastle is a city which is situated on the north bank of the River Tyne centered 8.5 mi (13.7 km) from the North Sea. The city grew as an important centre for the wool trade and it later became a major coal mining area. The port developed in the 16th century and, along with the shipyards lower down the river, was amongst the world's largest shipbuilding, and ship-repairing centres. These industries suffered decline and closure. Newcastle's economy includes a place as a corporate headquarters, learning, digital technology, retail, tourism and cultural centre.

---

**8. Canberra:**

---

Canberra is the capital city of Australia. With a population of 367,000, it is Australia's largest inland city and the eighth largest city overall. The city is located at the northern end of the Australian capital territory (ACT), 280 km (170 mi) south-west of Sydney, and 660 km (410 mi) north-east of Melbourne. A resident of Canberra is known as a "Canberran".

The site of Canberra was selected for the location of the nation's capital in 1908 as a compromise between rivals Sydney and Melbourne, Australia's two largest cities. It is unusual among Australian cities, being an entirely planned city outside of any state, similar to the American Federal District of Columbia. Following an international contest

for the city's design, a blueprint by the Chicago architects Marion Mahony Griffin Walter Burley Griffin was selected and construction commenced in 1913. The Griffins' plan featured geometric motifs such as circles, hexagons and triangles, and was centred around axes aligned with significant topographical landmarks in the Australian Capital Territory.

---

**9. Wollongong**

---

Wollongong is a seaside city located in the Illawarra region of New South Wales, Australia. Wollongong lies on the narrow coastal strip between the Illawarra Escarpment and the Pacific Ocean, 82 kilometres (51 mi) south of Sydney. Wollongong's Statistical District has a population of 292,190, making Wollongong the third largest city in New South Wales after Sydney and Newcastle and the ninth largest city in Australia.

Wollongong is noted for its heavy industry, its port activity and the quality of its physical setting, occupying a narrow coastal plain between an almost continuous chain of surf beaches and the cliff line of the rainforest-covered Illawarra escarpment. It has two cathedrals, churches of many denominations and the Nan Tien Temple, one of the largest Buddhist temples in the southern hemisphere. Wollongong has a long history of coalmining and industry. The city attracts many tourists each year, and is a regional centre for the South Coast fishing industry. Although other explanations have been offered, such as "great feast of fish", "hard ground near water", "song of the sea", "sound of the waves", "many snakes" and "five islands", the name Wollongong is believed to mean "seas of the South" in the local Aboriginal language, referring to NSW's Southern Coast.

---

**10. Sunshine Coast:**

---

The Sunshine Coast is an urban area in South East Queensland, north of the state capital of Brisbane on the Pacific Ocean coastline. Although it does not have a central business district, by population it ranks as the 10th largest metropolis in Australia and the third largest in Queensland.

The Glass House Mountains, located south-west of Caloundra, were first sighted by James Cook from the deck of HM Bark Endeavour in 1770. In the 1820s, the Sunshine Coast saw its first white inhabitants: three castaways (Finnegan, Pamphlet and Parsons) who shared the life of the local (Kabi Kabi) Aborigines for eight months. Thereafter, during the 1830s to 1840s, the district became home to numerous runaway convicts, being only slightly north of Moreton Bay (Brisbane) penal colony.

Many of the Sunshine Coast's towns began as simple ports or jetties for the timber industry during the 1860s and 1870s, as the area once had magnificent stands of forest. Likewise, the region's roads often began as snigging tracks for hauling timber. Timber getters used the region's creeks, rivers and lakes as seaways to float out their logs of cedar – the resultant wood being shipped as far afield as Europe.

By the 1890s, diverse small farming (fruit and dairy) replaced the cattle-and-timber economy of earlier decades. Sugar cane and pineapples proved especially important produce for the district. Many small hamlets and towns now emerged. Produce was initially taken by horse to Lands borough, then to Eudlo in 1891.

Especially after World War II, the Sunshine Coast grew into a favoured holiday and surfing destination. This tendency was further expanded in the development boom of the 1960s and 1970s. Around the same time, various tourist/ theme parks were created – the most iconic being Woombye's 'Big Pineapple.' During the 1960s and 1970s, the Sunshine Coast also attracted persons drawn to Alternative lifestyles. These newcomers developed a range of craft industries, co-operatives and spiritual centres, particularly in the hinterlands. After the 1980s, the Sunshine Coast experienced rapid population growth. It is now one of the fastest-growing regions in Australia. As the region becomes increasingly residential, most of the district's distinctive small farms – especially tropical fruit farms – have disappeared, as have most of its theme parks. Instead, businesses concerned with retail, catering and tourism have assumed increasing importance.

---

**15.6 TOURISM RESOURCES OF AUSTRALIA:**

---

- **Gold Coast:** Gold Coast, pretty beaches special for surfers and beach lovers. Other attractions are the Theme Parks and the busy night life in Surfers Paradise. The surrounding mountains and National Parks should not be missed with many waterfalls, flora and fauna to be appreciated.
- **Magnetic Island:** In front of Townsville, with fantastic beaches. 2/3 of the Island is considered National Park with many colonies of Koalas and Kangaroos to be seen in their natural habitat.
- **Whitsundays:** Whitsundays is a paradise for nautical sports with excellent nightlife and restaurants. The photo of helicopter in the top of this page is from the Whitsunday's. One of the best gateways to the Great Barrier Reef and island resorts. Perfect place to do a tour in a sailboat.
- **Ayers Rocks:** In the heart of Australia, close to the city of Alice Springs. It is the biggest rock monolith in the world and a sacred place to the Aborigines. All the surroundings are deserts full of special places. Alice Springs is the departure point.
- **Great Ocean Road** - about 3 hours driving from Melbourne, following the coast and mountains. The erosion caused by the sea and winds created giant monoliths of rock, called the 12 Apostles. (Now only 8 remains standing). Melbourne is an excellent urban city to visit, being the pilots the preferred city circuit. The international atmosphere and multiculturalism, nightlife, and the variety of excellent restaurants, makes Melbourne a must visit city in Australia.

- **Kakadu National Park** - Close to Darwin, One of the most beautiful National Parks in Australia with plenty of wild life and variety of native plants and Aboriginal paintings. The only negative point is that it is so popular, that is difficult to walk alone in the park without finding other tourists.
- **Tasmania:** One of the prettiest places in Australia, and in certain way it reminds some New Zealand landscapes. Nice cities with excellent infra structure to visitors. The nature is the highlight, with spectacular beaches. The mountains and lagoons are well known for their beauty and wild life, and there are many historical places from the time Tasmania was a biggest prison for British convicts.
- Australia has six States – New South Wales (NSW), Queensland (QLD), South Australia (SA), Tasmania (TAS), Victoria (VIC) and Western Australia (WA) – and two major mainland territories – the Australian Capital Territory (ACT) and the Northern Territory (NT). In most respects these two territories function as states, but the Commonwealth Parliament can override any legislation of their parliaments.

---

**15.7 TOP 10 PLACES IN AUSTRALIA:**

---

**1. Great Barrier Reef:** Diving is just one way to explore this enchanting underwater world. The Great Barrier Reef, situated in the Coral Sea off the coast of Queensland, is the largest coral reef in the world, encompassing 900 islands and stretching over a huge 2,600 kilometres. It's so vast that it can even be seen from outer space. The reef is now a World Heritage Site and home to a diverse range of life including whales, dolphins, porpoises, turtles, sea snakes, stingray, sharks and saltwater crocodiles, I've not even mentioned the numerous species of fish, frog or plant life either.

The present reef is thought to be around 6 to 8 thousand years old, but the reefs beginnings can be dated back to around 20,000 years ago.

The waters surrounding the reef are some of the clearest in the world, making it a popular destination for divers. Many cities along the Queensland coast offer daily boat trips to the reef and passengers who don't fancy getting their feet wet can view the reef from one of many glass-bottomed boats or underwater observatories that cruise the seas.

**2. Sydney Harbour:** Sydney was the location of the first European settlement in Australia and we've loved it ever since. This natural harbour is where you can find the iconic Sydney Opera House and magnificent Sydney Harbour Bridge. The best time of year to visit is New Year when you can witness the breathtaking sight of the world famous and a spectacular New Years Eve Fireworks.

Sydney Opera House is easily accessed on Bennelong Point, Sydney Harbour and has become one of the classic symbols of Australia. Its structure won the architect Jorn Utzon architecture's highest honour of the Pritzker Prize. He described the Opera House as "a symbol for not only a city, but a whole country and continent." The Opera House consists of one concert hall, two theatres, a playhouse, a studio, the Utzon room and the Forecourt as well as a restaurant, a café and a bar. Tours are given daily between 9am and 5pm.

Sydney Harbour Bridge spans the central business unit of Sydney and the North Shore. It's an impressive steel arch structure nicknamed 'The Coathanger' and was designed and built in Northumberland! It carries 7 lanes of traffic, 2 railway tracks, 1 footpath and 1 cycle lane.

Whilst you can drive across the bridge, there is a toll so beware! However what better way to see the bridge up close and personal than by walking across it? Signs direct pedestrians to a flight of steps on which the bridge can be accessed, there is also a lift from the Botanic Gardens or the Circular Quay.

**3. Tasmania:** Tasmania is an island on the southernmost tip of Australia, separated from the mainland by the Bass Strait. It has been nicknamed the "Island of Inspiration" because of the natural, unspoilt beauty it encompasses.

The island is 364 km long by 306 km wide and has a population of 500,000. Many natural wonders can be seen on the island, including the columns known as the 'organ pipes' on Mount Wellington and the quartzite formed ridges such as those on Frenchman's Cap. Rare rock formations can also be seen, as well as continental granites and magnificent caves.

Tasmania is the most mountainous region of Australia and its tallest mountain, Mount Ossa, can be found in the world-famous Cradle Mountain range. Other parts of Tasmania are heavily forested and are home to some of the world's last temperate rain forests in the Southern Hemisphere. It's also dotted with beautiful waterfalls and flowing rivers.

It is here where you will find the Great Oyster Bay, boasting a magnificent view of the surrounding peninsulas. Of its wildlife you will no doubt have heard of the great Tasmanian tiger, now sadly extinct although there have been unconfirmed sightings in Tasmania so you never know, it's worth taking your camcorder just in case! The Tasmanian devil might be easier to find, however do take care; these little devils pack an evil bite! Birds and frogs are also in great abundance on the island, making it a wildlife spotter's paradise!

Best time to visit is November through to March to avoid the heat of the summer.

**4. Melbourne:** Melbourne is the largest city in the state of Victoria and the second most populated city in Australia. It's characterized by many grand civic buildings including

Parliament House, Old Melbourne Gaol, the State Library, Melbourne Town Hall and many others, all funded by the Victoria gold rush in the 1850s. Recently Melbourne has become famous for its street art which began as graffiti in the 1970s and has now become big business with many art galleries bidding to display photos and stencil art by the young artists. So popular has it become that there is now a Melbourne Stencil Festival every year. Some of the best places to see original street art are in the areas of Abbotsford, Brunswick, Richmond, South Yarra and Collingwood among others. See the Stencil Fest for more information.

Melbourne is not known as the country's shopping capital for nothing, from budget shoppers to designer addicts, there is something here for everyone! The Arts Centre in the Southbank holds a Sunday Market that showcases over 150 stalls of the finest artisans, here you really will find a gift for that someone who has everything. Queen Victoria Markets are a must for fresh fruit and vegetables as well as bargain clothing and bags and the atmosphere of the market is just not to be missed. For something more classy and up market, head for the Royal Arcade, Melbourne's oldest shopping arcade or the Block Arcade which is based on those of Paris, London and Milan and practically oozes elegance. Chinatown is always buzzing with life and is home to the very best Chinese restaurants as well as Chinese cinema and a museum and it hosts many events.

In the middle of all these shops you'll find numerous parks and gardens in which you can rest and put your feet up whilst marveling at the tree-lined avenues and landscaped vistas. Best time to visit is said to be March when the evenings are still warm.

**5. Barossa:** Barossa is one of the major wine producing regions of Australia. It benefits from the hot climate of South Australia, being only 60km northeast of Adelaide. It also has a very diverse history that is reflected in its three major towns. Tanunda is regarded as the most German influenced as it was first populated by German settlers in the 1840s and the city still retains many German traits. Angaston, by contrast, is typically English, first being populated by Cornish miners. Nuriootpa was influenced by both Britain and Germany and is regarded as the most vibrant of the three.

The area is characterized by the fields of vines and viticulture is the main employment and income of the area. A fact that is celebrated in the yearly Vintage Festival held every April for a week. The event is marked with carnivals, bands, dancing, food and wine tasting, making April the best time of year to visit this area. Many big name wine brands come from this region including Wolf Blass, Yalumba, Orlando and others. The area boasts some of the oldest Shiraz vines in the world but other varieties include Riesling, Semillion, Grenache and Cabernet Sauvignon. Many wineries are open for tastings and there are organized tours that operate out of Adelaide. As well as sampling the wine, the food is also excellent, being a combination of traditional German heritage food and food made with fresh, local produce. After all that wining and dining, why not take in some of the areas many antique shops and art galleries too.

**6. Uluru:** Formerly Ayres Rock, this has to be one of the best-known sights of Australia. Uluru is situated in the so-called Red Centre in Northern Australia and is part of the UNESCO World Heritage Centre. Uluru measures a staggering 348 metres from top to bottom and has a circumference of 9.4 km. It also extends approximately 1.5 miles underground and this is the heart of what the Aborigines call their “dreamtime” and is what makes this site so sacred to them. They believe that the space underneath Uluru is actually hollow and contains the spirits of their ancestors.

Its structure is a single monolith, one of the biggest of its kind (disputes are ongoing as to whether it is Uluru that can claim the biggest monolith or Mount Augustus). It's made of sandstone which changes its colour from orange, to blue, violet or red during sunset and sunrise. There is a sunrise viewing point on the road around Uluru and also a sunset viewing point.

Climbing Uluru is frowned upon and there are signs discouraging visitors from doing so, but you can walk around the base which takes from 2 to 4 hours. There are numerous other walks you can do around Kata Tjuta, including the Valley of the Winds walk, a spectacular looped walk from two lookouts in Kata Tjura.

The best time to visit is July, August and September when the weather offers a more temperate climate.

**7. The Great Ocean Road:** This road runs along the southern coast of Australia. 250km by length it runs from the Bellarine Peninsula to Warrnambool. Built in 1930 in memory of fallen soldiers it takes in some of the most magnificent scenery in Australia. It is a car drivers dream, with its winding cliff top roads being featured in many films and television programmes, including many car advertisements. If you love driving, you'll love this! One of the most scenic parts of the road is the section in Port Campbell National Park where you can view some of the major rock formations, the famous of which are the Twelve Apostles.

There are many walks just off the road where you can get out and enjoy the surrounding countryside, including the Surf Coast Walk and the Great Ocean Walk. If you don't fancy doing it by car, or you don't trust the driver, there are many bus tours that run from Apollo Bay and Warrnambool. You can even see the road from the air with one of the many helicopter tours from the visitors centre at the Twelve Apostles near Port Campbell. You can drive the route in a day, but you'd be wise to allow two so that you can make a few stops along the way. There are passing places for slower vehicles to pull into and allow the faster cars to overtake, so if you notice a queue forming behind you, do pull over and let them get ahead. Best time to go, probably spring and autumn when the scenery is at its best.

**8. Fraser Island:** Fraser Island is the biggest sand island in world at 122 km long and the only place where sand and rain forest live in harmony. It is a World Heritage Site, making it a precious part of Australia's natural and cultural heritage.

Imagine long stretches of interrupted white beaches, clear blue lakes, ancient rainforests and striking sand cliffs. It is also home to many endangered and rare animal and plant species including dugongs, turtles, curlews, ferns, mangrove colonies etc. Its wetlands have been listed by the Convention on Wetlands of International Importance and are highly protected. Pure bred dingoes are also on the island, though visitors are advised not to feed them as they are highly dangerous.

Lake McKenzie is one of the most famous of the lakes on the island. It has crystal blue waters and perfect white sands. However with fame comes popularity and it can get crowded in the middle of the day during peak season.

Bird lovers will be in paradise as Fraser Island is home to over 300 species of bird, including many rare coastal birds such as brahminy kites and pied oyster catchers. The ground parrot also resides here along with honey-eaters and cockatoos. The whale spotters might catch a glimpse of humpback whales migrating from Antarctica between July and August or the occasional Tiger Shark which makes the inviting seas not so inviting for bathers!

One of the best things to do is hire your own 4WD and explore the island at your leisure. You can pitch up a camping place on the beach, although you will need a permit. Alternatively, you could choose the Youth Hostel or one of the many lodges.

**9. Daintree Rain Forest and Cape Tribulation:** Daintree National Park is about 3 hours north of Cairns. Within the park you'll find one of the oldest rain forests in world, a mere 135 million years old. It ends at Cape Tribulation where the Daintree Rainforest and the Great Barrier Reef meet.

Cape Tribulation, so called by Captain Cook because of all the troubles he encountered there, is now a popular destination for student travellers and backpackers and there is plenty of adventure still to be had here, whether it's in the form of kayaking, snorkeling or climbing.

The Daintree Rainforest also contains smatterings of little residential dwellings and some of the inhabitants of these villages make a living by offering tours around their land to visitors. You may be lucky enough to spot a cassowary whilst you are there. If you want to venture out alone, there are many trails throughout the forest, including aerial walkways for the brave.

The Park contains the highest number of plant and animal species that are rare or threatened. You can find out more about them by using one of the interactive rainforest guided walks that are available.

It's also the ideal place to try many exotic fruits with such curious sounding names as the Lemon Meringue Pie fruit and the Chocolate Pudding fruit. These fruits cannot be transported though because of their fragile states and in any case, it's best to eat them fresh, straight off the tree!

Riverboat hiring is also popular so that visitors can spot one of the crocodiles on the banks of the Daintree River. You can get there by car or bus from Cairns and Port Douglas, but for the energetic amongst you there are also cycle trails.

**10. Kakadu National Park:** Kakadu National Park is the largest national park in Australia and is situated in the north east corner of the Northern Territory. There is something for everyone here, from outback adventure and nature activities to aboriginal culture.

The park is ideal of those wishing to know more about Aboriginal culture as it contains the highest number of aboriginal rock art sites in the world, the most famous of which are at Nourlangie Rock and Ubirr. The Aboriginal people have occupied this area for at least 40 000 years and there still remains wholly aboriginal land such as Arnhem Land, steeped in aboriginal culture and history and also home to diverse wildlife and stunning landscapes.

Kakadu Park is certainly a wildlife haven with no less than 68 species of mammal, 120 reptiles, 26 frog species, 10,000 insect species, 290 bird species and 2,000 types of plant. There are still species yet to be discovered. The popular wetlands provide the most visual attractions, filled with sleepy saltwater crocodiles and colonies of herons. Feral horses, pigs and water buffalo can all be spotted here.

The landscape also has many treats in store, including the spectacular twin falls in Arnhem Lane; Yellow Water, the famous billabong that is literally crammed with wildlife and Gunlow Plunge Pool which combines beautiful waterfalls with a crystal clear and cool plunge pool.

Best time to visit is October to December or April to June when the weather is cooler and the wildlife more abundant.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS:**

---

- Write a short note on variety of tourism products in Australia.
- What are the tourist attractions of Australia?
- Make a list of top 10 biggest cities of Australia.
- Indicate the 10 biggest cities in the maps of Australia.

- Indicate the top 10 places to visit in the map of Australia.
- Give the history of Australia.

---

**15.8 LETS UP SUM UP:**

---

This unit gives ideas about the brief history of Australia. After going through this unit, we have understood that which are the important cities, their geographical location, culture, environment, history, economy and government etc. We came to know the major attractions / tourist destination and their different dimensions in the country. This unit gives complete information that makes Australia a most preferred destination all over the world.

This unit ends with the description of top places to visit in Australia, which help to choose a destination as per the interest of the tourists.

---

**15.9 CLUES TO ANSWERS:**

---

- Refer Sec. 15.4
- Refer Sec. 15.7
- Refer Sec. 15.5
- Refer Sec. 15.5
- Refer Sec. 15.7
- Refer Sec. 15.3

---

**REFERENCES:**

---

- Australian Bureau of Statistics (31 October 2012). "Australia" 2011 Census Quick Stats. Retrieved 21 June 2012.
- Human Development Report 2013. UN. 2013. Retrieved 14 March 2013.
- Stuart Macintyre, *the Oxford History of Australia: vol. 4* (1986), p. 142; C. Bean Ed. (1941). Vol.1 – The Story of Anzac: the first phase, First World War Official Histories, Eleventh Edition.
- Australia in Brief: the island continent. Department of Foreign Affairs and Trade. Archived from the original on 4 June 2009. Retrieved 29 May 2009.
- Australia. *UNESCO World Heritage Centre*. UNESCO. Retrieved 5 September 2009.
- 2011 census reveals one in four Australians is born overseas. Australian Bureau of Statistics. 21 June 2012. Retrieved 21 June 2012.

- Denoon, Donald, et al. (2000). *A History of Australia, New Zealand, and the Pacific*. Oxford: Blackwell.
- Davison, Graeme; Hirst, John; Macintyre, Stuart (1999). *The Oxford Companion to Australian History*. Melbourne, Vic.: Oxford University Press.
- Goad, Philip and Julie Willis (eds) (2011). *The Encyclopedia of Australian Architecture*. Cambridge University Press, Port Melbourne, Victoria.
- Macintyre, Stuart (2000). *A Concise History of Australia*. Cambridge, U.K.: Cambridge University Press.
- Powell JM (1988). *An Historical Geography of Modern Australia: The Restive Fringe*. Cambridge, U.K.: Cambridge University Press.

---

**Unit-16**  
**New Zealand**

---

**Structure:**

**16.1 Objectives**

**16.2 Introduction**

**16.3 History of New Zealand**

**16.4 Variety of Tourism Products in New Zealand**

**16.5 New Zealand's Ten Biggest Cities**

**16.6 Tourism Resources in New Zealand**

**16.7 Top Ten Places in New Zealand**

**16.8 Lets up Sum Up**

**16.9 Clues to Answers**

---

**16.1 OBJECTIVES:**

---

The aim of this unit is to provide information of New Zealand, Tourism point of view. This unit will guide to the student about the Geographical location and all Tourism aspects of New Zealand, who attract not only the domestic tourists but also the foreign tourists in terms of tourism receipts and tourist arrivals. After going through Unit 17 on New Zealand, You will understand the following:

- Geographical location of the country
- Historical richness of the Country
- Importance of Culture in development of Tourism
- Characteristics of Tourism industry in New Zealand
- Natural attractions in the Country
- Important tourist cities in the Country
- Top tourist attractions of the Country

---

**16.2 INTRODUCTION:**

---

Unit 16 makes an effort to gives the idea to the students about the New Zealand a as a tourist destination and help them to understand the various dimensions of the Tourism attractions of the country. This unit attempts to through the light on the important cities, Geographical aspects, Attractions (Natural and Man-made), culture and its all aspects, environment, history, economy, government etc. in New Zealand.

Some interesting facts about New Zealand:

- **Name:** New Zealand
- **Motto:** none, formerly *Onward*
- **Population:** 4,451,017 (January, 2013 estimate)
- **Capital:** Wellington
- **Language:** English (95.9%)
- **Religion:** Christianity
- **Government:** Unitary parliamentary constitutional monarchy
- **Currency:** New Zealand dollar (NZD)

---

**16.3 HISTORY OF NEW ZEALAND:**

---

*New Zealand* is an island country in the southwestern Pacific Ocean. The country geographically comprises two main landmasses – that of the North and South Islands – and numerous smaller islands. New Zealand is situated some 1,500 kilometres (900 mi) east of Australia across the Tasman Sea and roughly 1,000 kilometres (600 mi) south of the Pacific island nations of New Caledonia, Fiji, and Tonga. Because of its remoteness, it was one of the last lands to be settled by humans. Polynesians settled New Zealand in

1250–1300 CE and developed a distinctive Maori culture, and Europeans first made contact in 1642 CE. The country underwent major economic changes during the 1980s, which transformed it from a protectionist to a liberalized free trade economy. Markets for New Zealand's agricultural exports have diversified greatly since the 1970s, with once-dominant exports of wool being overtaken by dairy products, meat, and recently wine.

During its long isolation, New Zealand developed a distinctive biodiversity of animal, fungal and plant life. Most notable are the large number of unique bird species, many of which became extinct after the arrival of humans and introduced mammals. With a mild maritime climate, the land was mostly covered in forest. The country's varied topography and its sharp mountain peaks owe much to the tectonic uplift of land and volcanic eruptions caused by the Pacific and Indo -Australian Plates clashing beneath the earth's surface.

New Zealand is organized into 11 regional councils and 67 territorial authorities for local government purposes; these have less autonomy than the country's long defunct provinces did. Nationally, executive political power is exercised by the Cabinet, led by the Prime Minister. New Zealand is a member of the Asia-Pacific Economic Corporation, Commonwealth of Nations, Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development, Pacific Islands Forum, and the United Nations.

New Zealand was first settled by Eastern Polynesians between 1250 and 1300, concluding a long series of voyages through the southern Pacific islands. Over the centuries that followed these settlers developed a distinct culture now known as Maori.

New Zealand has a modern, prosperous and developed market economy with an estimated gross domestic product (GDP) at purchasing power parity (PPP) per capita of roughly US\$28,250. The currency is the New Zealand dollar, informally known as the "Kiwi dollar"; it also circulates in the Cook Islands (see Cook Islands dollar)), Niue, Tokelau, and the Pitcairn Islands. New Zealand was ranked 5th in the 2011 Human Development Index, 4th in The Heritage Foundation's 2012 Index of Economic Freedom, and 13th in INSEAD's 2012 Global Innovation Index.

---

**16.4 VARIETY OF TOURISM PRODUCTS:**

---

Popular tourist activities in New Zealand include sightseeing, adventure tourism tramping, (hiking) and camping and Buggy jumping. To support active travel, New Zealand has created numerous walking and hiking paths (often created and maintained by the DOC), some of which, like the Milford Track, have huge international recognition. There is also a walking route the length of the country, Te Araroa Trail, which is in the process of being finished as of the late 2000s, and a proposed New Zealand Cycle way.

Direct flights from Australia to Queenstown have also boosted overseas winter tourism. Ecotourism is also become an increasing segment of the tourism market, and both tourism spends and trip duration are relatively high, due to the remote location of the country attracting few short-trip visitors.

---

**16.5 NEW ZEALAND'S TEN BIGGEST CITIES:**

---

**1. Auckland:** Topping the list of New Zealand's biggest cities is Auckland; New Zealand's premier city destination for breathtaking scenery, beautiful beaches, idyllic holiday islands, great food, wine and shopping and exciting nightlife.

**2. Wellington:** New Zealand's capital city, Wellington, is a city of pleasant contrasts and a charming cosmopolitan feel. Positioned on the edge of a harbour, Wellington is surrounded by lovely rolling hills and stunning natural attractions. Explore the great outdoors, shop until you drop, sample fine foods and wander through splendid vineyards; Wellington has it all.

**3. Christchurch:** Christchurch is the largest city on the South Island and lies just north of the Banks Peninsula. The city is centred around the lovely Cathedral Square; an area which is a must for any Christchurch tourist. Some of New Zealand's best experiences start here, including the Hanmer Springs Thermal Pools and Spa, plenty of ski areas and swimming with dolphins.

**4. Hamilton:** Positioned within the Waikato region of the North Island, Hamilton boasts a wide variety of city attractions and offers everything a metropolitan centre should have. The Hamilton Gardens are a particularly popular spot, offering unique garden contrasts and idyllic settings. The zoo is another hot spot, allowing tourists to discover a whole new animal world.

**5. Napier:** Located within Hawke's Bay, Napier is a port city that boasts incredible scenery and fantastic wineries. Commonly associated with Hastings City, Napier is a popular tourist city with a unique concentration of 1930's Art Deco architecture. Napier is also famous for the wide variety of water sports on offer, including water skiing, wind surfing, kayaking and parasailing.

**6. Tauranga:** Tauranga is one of New Zealand's main centers for business, international trade, culture, fashion, education and entertainment, and is also one of its fastest growing cities. Each year Tuaranga hosts the National Jazz Festival, which attracts visitors from far and wide. Tourists are met with beautiful mountain and coastal scenery, along with a vast array of exciting things to see and do.

**7. Dunedin:** The people of Dunedin describe it as a "vibrant city surrounded by a giant outdoor playground", and this could not be truer. It's most notable natural highlight is of course the Otago Peninsula, which is home to some of New Zealand's most fascinating fauna. Dunedin also regards itself as one of the most preserved Victorian and Edwardian cities in the Southern Hemisphere, ensuring all the architectural beauty of Europe, without the crowds.

**8. Nelson:** Nelson is a centre for arts and crafts and is famous for hosting the annual Nelson Arts Festival. The city is also home to some fantastic beaches and a sheltered harbour, with kayaking a popular past time.

The Nelson region also covers the picturesque coastline of the Abel Tasman National Park, which is a must-see while visiting the South Island.

**9. Rotorua:** Much like Queenstown, Rotorua is also a city that is home to "world first" adventure experiences. Claiming that they capture the best of New Zealand in one, Rotorua is a city that encompasses the best of both natural and man-made attractions.

Most people travel to Rotorua to experience Maori culture and the geothermal earth forces, which are among one of the most earth moving experiences one could ever have. Rotorua also boasts some incredible mountain and lake scenery, with mountain biking a popular past time.

**10. Queenstown:** Known as the "Adventure Capital of the World", Queenstown may be small, but it is one you cannot be missed. Queenstown is New Zealand's premier ski destination as it is surrounded by magnificent mountains and crystal clear lake settings.

Queenstown is also a spring board for activities like bungee jumping, sky diving and white water rafting, making it a must-visit for anyone seeking a natural injection of adrenaline.

---

## **16.6 TOURISM RESOURCES IN NEW ZEALAND:**

---

Tourism is an important industry in New Zealand, contributing NZ\$ 15 billion (or 9%) of the country's GDP in 2010. It is also New Zealand's largest export industry, with about 2.4 million international tourists visiting per year (as of September 2009), providing 18% of the country's export earnings in 2010. New Zealand is marketed abroad as a "clean, green" adventure playground, with typical destinations being nature areas such as Milford Sound, Abel Tasman National Park or the Tongariro Alpine Crossing, while activities such as bungee jumping or whale watching exemplify typical tourist attractions, often marketed primarily to individual- and small - group travellers. By far the highest numbers of New Zealand's tourists come from its neighbouring country Australia due to close proximity and relations.

The vast majority of tourist arrivals to New Zealand come through Auckland Airport which handled over eleven million passengers in 2004. Many international tourists also spend time in Christchurch, Queenstown, Rotorua, and Wellington. Other high-profile destinations include the Bay of Islands, Waitomo Caves, Aoraki/ Mount Cook, and Milford Sound. Many tourists travel large distances through the country during their stays, typically using coach lines or hire cars.

Domestic tourism is also important, with domestic tourism expenditure of \$13 billion outweighing international tourist expenditure of \$9 billion in 2010. Overall, tourism supports some 180,000 full-time equivalent jobs (10% of the New Zealand workforce), with half directly related to tourism. In November 2012 readers of UK paper 'The Telegraph' voted New Zealand the best country in the world to go to on holiday. The national airline, Air New Zealand, was voted third-best long-haul carrier.

Sky Tower, in Auckland, the tallest free-standing structure in the Southern Hemisphere, is an observation tower as well as a revolving restaurant.

Popular tourist activities in New Zealand include sightseeing, adventure tourism, tramping (hiking), Buggy jumping and camping. To support active travel, New Zealand has created numerous walking and hiking paths (often created and maintained by the DOC), some of which, like the Milford track, have huge international recognition.

There is also a walking route the length of the country, Te Araroa Trail, which is in the process of being finished as of the late 2000s, and a proposed New Zealand Cycle way. Direct flights from Australia to Queenstown have also boosted overseas winter tourism. Ecotourism is also become an increasing segment of the tourism market, and both tourism spends and trip duration are relatively high, due to the remote location of the country attracting few short-trip visitors.

The snow-capped Southern Alps dominate the South Island, while the North Island's Northland peninsula stretches towards the subtropics.

Mount Cook viewed from the road to Mount Cook Village, located in the Southern Alps. A significant portion of New Zealand's South Islands landscape is mountainous.

New Zealand is made up of two main islands and a number of smaller islands, located near the centre of the water hemisphere. The main North and South Islands are separated by the Cook Strait, 22 kilometres (14 mi) wide at its narrowest point. Besides the North and South Islands, the five largest inhabited islands are Stewart Island, the Chatham Islands, Great Barrier Island (in the Hauraki Gulf), d Urville Island in the Marlborough Sound) and Waiheke Island (about 22 km (14 mi) from central Auckland).

New Zealand is long (over 1,600 kilometres (990 mi) along its north-north-east axis) and narrow (a maximum width of 400 kilometres (250 mi)), with approximately 15,134 km

(9,404 mi) of coastline and a total land area of 268,021 square kilometres (103,483 sq mi) Because of its far-flung outlying islands and long coastline, the country has extensive marine resources. Its Exclusive Economic Zones, one of the largest in the world, covers more than 15 times its land area

The South Island is the largest land mass of New Zealand, and is divided along its length by the Southern Alps. There are 18 peaks over 3,000 metres (9,800 ft), the highest of which is Aoraki/Mount Cook at 3,754 metres (12,316 ft). Fiordland's steep mountains and deep fiords record the extensive ice age glaciations of this south-western corner of the South Island. The North Island is less mountainous but is marked by volcanism. The highly active Taupo Volcanic Zone has formed a large volcanic plateau, punctuated by the North Island's highest mountain, Mount Ruapehu (2,797 metres (9,177 ft)). The plateau also hosts the country's largest lake, Lake Taupo, nestled in the caldera of one of the world's most active super volcanoes.

The country owes its varied topography, and perhaps even its emergence above the waves, to the dynamic boundary it straddles between the Pacific and Indo-Australian Plates. New Zealand is part of Zealandia, a micro continent nearly half the size of Australia that gradually submerged after breaking away from the Gondwanan supercontinent. About 25 million years ago, a shift in plate tectonic movements began to contort and culture of the region. This is now most evident in the Southern Alps, formed by compression of the crust beside the Alpine Fault. Elsewhere the plate boundary involves the subduction of one plate under the other, producing the Puysegur Trench to the south, the Hikurangi Trench east of the North Island, and the Kermadec and Tonga Trenches further north.

New Zealand has a modern, prosperous and developed market economy with an estimated gross domestic product (GDP) at purchasing power parity (PPP) per capita of roughly US\$28,250. The currency is the New Zealand dollar, informally known as the "Kiwi dollar"; it also circulates in the Cook Islands Niue, Tokelau, and the Pitcairn islands.

New Zealand was ranked 5th in the 2011 Human Development Index, 4th in the The Heritage Foundation's 2012 Index of Economic Freedom, and 13th in INSEAD's 2012 Global innovation Index.

---

**16.7 TOP 10 PLACES IN NEW ZEALAND:**

---

**1. Kaikoura:** In the Maori language, Kaikoura means "meal of crayfish," a nod to the New Zealand township's seafood-rich origins. Remnants of those early days can be found at Fyffe House, the oldest surviving building, and Kaikoura Museum. Situated on the east coast of New Zealand's South Island lies the seaside town of Kaikoura. The town overlooks majestic mountains which are snow capped for many months of the year.

Besides the beautiful landscape, the real attraction lies in the waters off the coast where an abundant rich habitat for marine mammals and seabirds exists.

Kaikoura is one of the few places in the world where whales can be seen all year round. In addition, you can see dolphins, seals, as well as enjoy swimming, fishing, and diving (including shark diving). In short, Kaikoura offers a large number of both land and water-based activities like no other. It also has good restaurants that serve up fresh produce such as crayfish.

**2. Coromandel peninsula:** Accessible within a two-hour drive from New Zealand's biggest city, Auckland, the Coromandel is blessed with a superb climate coupled with some of New Zealand's best beaches. A thermal beach called Hot Water Beach is one attraction worth seeing. Volcanic heat rises through the ground allowing you to create your own spa pool by simply digging a small hole in the sand and waiting for it to fill up with warm sea water. Other coastal attractions include the spectacular Cathedral Cove and the great beach at Whangamata. Inland this area is covered with extinct volcanos which rise above the forests to provide some great vantage points. These volcanic hills and the surrounding area are either farmland or left in their natural state which is a covering of lush temperate rain forest, making the terrain ideal for trekking/walks. The forests also contain the tallest fern trees in the world, some reaching heights of 20 metres or more. The abundance of fern species in the Coromandel gives the area a subtropical look and feel even though it has a temperate climate. The Coromandel Peninsula is situated in the Coromandel region.

**3. Tongariro National Park:** Tongariro National Park is a World Heritage Park and one of the oldest National Parks in the world. The park contains 3 prominent active volcanoes that are situated in a desert like landscape. The area gets regular snowfalls in the winter and is home to most of the ski fields in the North Island. Mt. Ruapehu the largest volcano last erupted in 1995 and 1996. A conical volcano called Mt. Ngauruhoe located next to Ruapehu is the location for the famous Tongariro Crossing. This walk is a tough one-day trek that comes highly recommended, as it shows off the best that this peak has on offer. At one time, National Geographic even classed this walk as one of the top 10 one day walks in the world. Tongariro National Park is situated in the Taupo region.

**4. Westland National Park:** This national park is part of the South Westland World Heritage area and is famous for its mountains and two dominant glaciers, Fox and Franz Josef. They are the closest glaciers to the coastline of any in the world outside the Polar Regions. This means they are not only accessible, but the climate is much warmer compared to other glacial sites in the world. Lowland areas in the park are covered in an ancient Beech Forest which is backed by steep cliffs and mountains.

It's a contradiction to view glaciers from a rain forest, but this phenomenon is explained by the areas steepness and high rainfall. The coastline is a short drive away and on route

there are some great views of the glaciers and mountains reflecting in lakes that are scattered around this area. Westland National Park offers many activities for visitors such as a guided trek up one of the glaciers or a helicopter ride to the top of the Southern Alps, a mountain range bigger in area than the European Alps. If you want nature and spectacular scenery, and you don't mind the likelihood of some rain, then Westland National Park is a great place to visit. Westland National Park is situated in the West coast region.

**5. Mt. Cook National Park:** Mt Cook and the surrounding area is an alpine park within the World Heritage listed South Westland. The biggest peaks in all of Australasia are here including the highest mountain, Mt Cook, and neighbouring peaks such as Mt Tasman, and Mt Sefton. The park doesn't contain many trees or plants due to the altitude, but this rugged and alpine terrain is covered in colorful lupins which gives the area a gentler and more picturesque look than the rocky environment that it is.

The main accommodation here is the Hermitage Hotel and this grand hotel is also the main departure point to the many scenic walks and guided treks on offer. Walks range from a two-hour stroll to difficult tracks suitable for experienced mountaineers only. A helicopter or plane ride gives visitors unsurpassed views of the mountains with the option of landing at the top of Tasman Glacier a true perpetually snow covered alpine environment. This glacier is New Zealand's longest and has one of longest ski runs in the world if you decide that you want to descend without the plane. Mt Cook National Park is situated in the Canterbury region.

**6. Bay of Islands:** The subtropical Bay of Islands is the finest maritime park in New Zealand. There are around 150 islands to explore, many with superb beaches and secluded bays. This park has an abundance of marine life, including marlin, whales, penguins, and dolphins. The Bay as it is known attracts many people the world over including fishermen, golfers, marine enthusiasts, and of course tourist who just want to enjoy the sub-tropical climate and swim in some of the best beaches in the country. The mainland near The Bay of Islands is also the historical heart of New Zealand, where the Treaty of Waitangi was signed, which is the founding document of the nation. The Bay of Islands is situated in the Northland region.

**7. Rotorua:** Accessible from New Zealand's biggest city,(Auckland), Rotorua is famous for its volcanic activity. The area is one of the world's great geothermal areas. Geothermal reserves such as Waimangu, Waiotapu, and Whakarewarewa are found here. These reserves are situated in beautiful natural surroundings and have spectacular examples of geysers, boiling pools, hot springs, boiling mud, volcanic terraces, fumeroles, and craters. Rotorua is also famous for its plentiful lakes which are great for swimming and fishing. The surrounding area contains plenty of native bush ideal for trekking.

Mt. Tarawera a nearby volcano offers spectacular scenery including superb views inside the rim of the volcano. Rotorua is also the best area in the country to experience and learn about Maori Culture. Rotorua is situated in the Bay of Plenty region.

**8. Queenstown:** For action adventure and scenery, Queenstown has it all. Fit for a queen, this beautiful lake side town is surrounded by mountains and is one of New Zealand's premier tourist destinations. It is also the home of bungee jumping which was first commercialized by New Zealander A J Hackett as well as jet boating which was invented in New Zealand. Other adrenaline activities include parapenting and white water rafting. Queenstown is also one of the southern hemispheres premier skiing destinations and enables skiers from around the world to ski during the northern hemisphere's summer. If you are not an adrenaline junkie then Queenstown is absolutely still the place to go, even if it is to just admire the spectacular mountain scenery while enjoying the many cafes, restaurants, and shops on offer. Queenstown is situated in the Otago region.

**9. Abel Tasman National Park:** Abel Tasman may be New Zealand's smallest national park, but the attractions are huge. Located in one of New Zealand's sunniest spots, it almost seems planned that the area also has the best beaches in the country. The beaches have a range of coloured sand from gold to white that look out onto the clear waters of the Tasman Sea. Beyond the beaches, the park is covered in lush temperate rain forest and Manuka, a type of tea tree. The popular Abel Tasman Walk is a great way to see this park; it takes 3-5 days to complete. Se Taxis are also available and can drop you off at any number of beaches within the park. This gives you the complete freedom to do a full or partial trek, or alternatively you can be whisked away from the entrance of the park to a beach of your choice. Kayaking here is popular and gives you access to all the beaches, including those that the walk misses out on. Abel Tasman National Park is situated in the Nelson region.

**10. Fiordland National Park:** World Heritage area and is New Zealand's largest national park and one of the largest in the world. The scenery in Fiordland is nothing short of stunning, with deep fiords, steep mountains, raging waterfalls, and lush rain forests. Fiordland is home to Milford Sound described by Rudyard Kipling as the 'Eighth Wonder of the World' and Doubtful Sound which many say is even more spectacular. The area also has some of the world's great walks including the world famous Milford Track, which was billed as the finest walk in the world in the early twentieth century by the London Spectator. There are a number of walks here that rival the Milford, including the Route burn and Kepler. In addition to the walks, there is Sutherland Falls one of thousands of waterfalls in the park, and one of the highest in the world. You can also dive in the fiords and see deep sea plants growing near the surface and the chance of seeing dolphins, seals, and rare bird life is high. There is also Mitre Peak a mountain that rises to the staggering height of 1 mile straight out of the ocean.

Fiordland is however one of the wettest places on Earth and when it rains, thousands of waterfalls put on quite a show, (imagine countless raging waterfalls side by side thundering into the salt water of the sea). On a fine day however, the landscape is so other world that you would think that you were in the movie Lord of the Rings, which is no exaggeration given that much of the movie was filmed here. Fiordland is situated in the Southland region.

---

**CHECK YOUR PROGRESS**

---

- Write a short notes on variety of tourism products in New Zealand.
- What are the tourist attractions of New Zealand?
- Make a list of top 10 biggest cities of New Zealand.
- Indicate the 10 biggest cities in the maps of New Zealand.
- Indicate the top 10 places to visit in the map of New Zealand.
- Give brief history of New Zealand.

---

**16.8 LETS UP SUM UP:**

---

This unit gives ideas about the brief history of New Zealand. After going through this unit, we have understood that which are the important cities, their geographical location, culture, environment, history, economy and government etc. We came to know the major attractions / tourist destination and their different dimensions in the country. This unit gives complete information that makes New Zealand a most preferred destination all over the world.

This unit ends with the description of top places to visit in New Zealand, which help to choose a destination as per the interest of the tourists.

---

**16.9 CLUES TO ANSWERS:**

---

- Refer Sec. 16.4
- Refer Sec. 16.7
- Refer Sec. 16.5
- Refer Sec. 16.5
- Refer Sec. 16.6
- Refer Sec. 16.3

---

**REFERENCES:**

---

- Quick Stats about Culture and Identity: languages spoken. Statistics New Zealand. March 2006. Retrieved 20 February 2008.
- Didham, Robert; Potter, Deb (April 2005). Understanding and working with Ethnicity Data. Statistics New Zealand .ISBN 978-0-478-31505-9. Archived from the original on 25 November 2007. Retrieved 19 September 2010.
- The New Zealand Land Cover Database. *New Zealand Land Cover Database 2*. New Zealand Ministry for the Environment. 1 July 2009. Retrieved 26 April 2011.
- Quick Stats about New Zealand's population and Dwellings: Population counts. *2006 Census*. Statistics New Zealand. Retrieved 14 April 2011.